

The
Essential
Player's
Guide
to
Chess
Strategy

Caro-Kann Defence

Alexei Suetin



COMPETITIVE

Caro-Kann Defence

ALEXEI SUETIN

B. T. BATSFORD Ltd, *London*

First published (in German) 1983
English translation first published 1988
Revised and updated
© Sportverlag 1988
140 355/48/88

ISBN 0 7134 5939 5

Typeset by Sportverlag Berlin

and printed in German Democratic Republic by LVZ Druckerei "Hermann Duncker"

Leipzig

for the publishers,

B. T. Batsford Ltd,

4 Fitzhardinge Street, London W1H 0AH

All rights reserved. No part of this publication
may be reproduced, in any form or by any
means, without permission from the Publisher

A BATSFORD CHESS BOOK

Adviser. R. D. Keene, OBE

Technical Editor: Iran Kingston

Contents

Foreword	7
Caro-Kann Defence 1 e4 c6	9
Part I	
2 d4 d5	10
Chapter 1	
3 ♖c3 de 4 ♜×e4 ♚d7	11
Chapter 2	
3 ♖c3 de 4 ♜×e4 ♜f5	34
Chapter 3	
3 ♖c3 de 4 ♜×e4 ♚f6	66
Chapter 4	
3 ♖c3 g6, 3 ♚d2 g6	87
Part II	
2 d4 d5 and 2 c4	90
Chapter 1	
System 3 f3	90
Exchange system — 3 ed cd 4 ♜d3	91
Chapter 2	
Panov Attack — 3 ed cd 4 c4	95
System 2 c4	111
Chapter 3	
Closed system — 3 e5 ♜f5	117
Part III	
Other white 2nd move continuations	127
Sample games	150
Index of openings and variations	155

Foreword to the English edition

This publication which is concerned with the Caro-Kann Defence has been commissioned by B. T. Batsford Ltd, London. It is a revised edition of my book which was published by Sportverlag Berlin in 1983.

This new edition is the result of a thorough analysis of all the essential

theoretical and practical material available since 1983, including the 1987 Candidates Super Final between Karpov and Sokolov. The Caro-Kann Defence has been enriched in recent years by interesting tactical and strategic ideas confirming its reliability.

A. Suetin

Caro-Kann Defence

1 e2-e4 c7-c6

The Caro-Kann Defence was named in honour of the two chess players M. Kann, Pécs, and G. Caro, Berlin.

This line was first mentioned as early as the 16th century. S. Winawer occasionally used it in the 1880s, and in 1891 Bilguer subjected it to a general analysis in his well-known "Handbuch der Schacheröffnungen". In these days 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 was regarded as the best continuation for White. Since that time the Caro-Kann Defence has undergone some major evolutionary changes and has been played by a number of international grandmasters. It has held an eminent place in the opening repertoire of Capablanca, Botvinnik, Petrosian, and currently Karpov.

The basic idea of the Caro-Kann Defence is to prepare for an attack on e4 without blocking the c8-h3 diagonal. What happens quite often is that the bishop on c8 is developed to g4 or f5. On the other hand, the control by the black pawns of the centre is reduced, as the freeing move c6-c5 involves a loss of tempo. In

some cases the player is obliged to delay this move as long as possible as the c6 pawn is forced to play an important part in the defence and to restrain the opponent's d4-d5 advance in the centre.

Notwithstanding an element of passivity the Caro-Kann Defence has enjoyed a good reputation over many years. Its reliability and durability are confirmed in practice. Black often succeeds in introducing active counterplay.

Of all the possibilities for White's second move, 2 d4 is the most important. After 2 ... d5 White has three options: to retain the central tension by 3 ♖c3, 3 ♖d2 or 3 f3; to reduce tension by playing 3 ed cd (and further 4 c4 or 4 ♗d3); or to block the centre with 3 e5. These continuations are all dealt with in the first and most important part of our study.

Moreover, White has a wide variety of other continuations at his disposal of which the system 2 ♖f3 d5 3 ♖c3 plays the most important role.

Part I

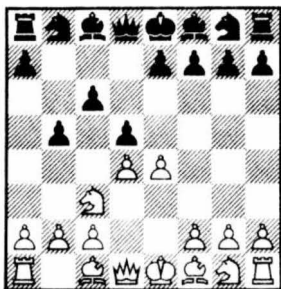
1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5

These two moves initiate the major portion of the Caro-Kann Defence. Many different systems are developing rapidly, although the theoretical framework has remained unchanged for some time now. They include the variations 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♗×e4 ♗d7 5 ♜c4 ♗gf6 6 ♗g5 e6 7 ♞e2 ♗b6 8 ♜d3, and 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♗c3 de 4 ♗×e4 ♜f5 5 ♗g3 ♜g6 6 h4 h6 7 ♗f3 ♗d7 8 h5 ♜h7 9 ♜d3, etc.

3 ♗b1-c3 ...

Apart from this most important continuation which has spread widely in the last decades, White can also play 3 ♗d2 which, after 3 ... de, transposes into the main variation. A difference between the moves 3 ♗c3 and 3 ♗d2 is shown in the continuation 3 ... g6 dealt with in Chapter 4, Part I.

If, in reply to 3 ♗c3 Black chooses the move 3 ... b5 introduced by Gurgenzidze, the following continuations may arise:



1) 4 a3 de 5 ♗×e4 ♗f6 (also possible is 5 ... ♜f5 6 ♜d3 ♗×e4 7 ♗×e4 ♗f6 8 ♜d3 e6 9 ♗f3 ♜e7 10 ♞e2 ♗bd7 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♜e1 ♜e8 13 ♗e5 and White exerts pressure, Tal-Gurgenzidze, 36th USSR Championship, 1968/69; also worth considering is 8 ... ♞×d4 9 ♗f3 ♞d5 10 0-0 e6; while 6 ... ♞×d4 7 ♗f3 ♞d5 8 ♞e2 gives a dangerous initiative to White, Petrosian and Suetin) 6 ♗×f6+ ef 7 a4 (Black obtains level play after 7 c3 ♜d6 8 ♜d3 0-0 9 ♞f3 ♜e6 10 ♗e2 ♜d5, Schmit-Bronstein, USSR 1970, or 7 ♗f3 ♜d6 8 ♜d3 0-0 9 0-0 ♜g4 10 a4 b4 11 c4 bc 12 bc ♗d7 13 ♜e4 f5, Kupreichik-Bokuchava, Dubna 1970) 7 ... b4 8 ♜c4 ♜d6 9 ♞e2+ ♞e7 10 ♞×e7+ ♜×e7 11 ♗e2 ♜e6 12 ♜d3 ♗d7 13 0-0 ♜ac8 14 ♜e1, and White has a small advantage (Klovan-Gurgenzidze, 36th USSR Championship, 1968/69).

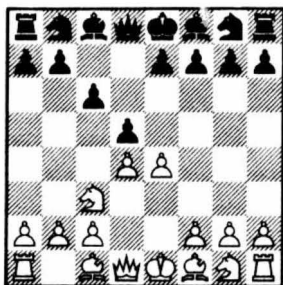
2) 4 e5 e6 5 a3 a5 6 ♗ce2 ♜a6 7 ♗f4 b4 8 ♜×a6 ♗×a6 9 ab ab 10 ♗f3 ♜e7 11 h4 h5 12 ♗g5 ♜×g5 13 hg g6 14 g4 h4 15 ♜e3, and here, too, White retains some initiative (I. Zaitsev-Gurgenzidze, 36th USSR Championship, 1968/69).

(see diagram)

3 ... d5×e4

4 ♗c3×e4 ...

White has here a number of gambit variations, although they are less correct and hardly used in practice:



1) 4 f3! ef (Black also gets good play with 4 ... e5 5 de ♗×d1+ 6 ♖×d1 ef, Gunderam, or 4 ... e3!) 5 ♖×f3 ♖f5 6 ♖c4 (also better for Black is 6 ♖e5 ♖d7 7 ♗f3 e6 followed by ♖×e5) 6 ... e6 7 0-0 ♖e7 8 ♖e5 ♖g6 9 ♗f3 ♖f6, and Black retains the extra pawn (Gunderam).

2) 4 ♖c4 ♖f6 5 f3 ♖f5 (also good is 5 ... ef 6 ♖×f3 e6) 6 ♗e2 ef 7 ♖×f3 e6 8 0-0 ♖e7 9 ♖g5 ♖bd7 10 ♖ad1 0-0 11 ♖h1 ♗c7, and Black has a sound extra pawn.

3) 4 ♖e3 ♖f6 5 f3 ef 6 ♗×f3 ♖g4 7 ♗f2 e6, and here, too White has no compensation for the pawn (Gunderam).

After the main variation 4 ♖×e4 Black can choose between three equally popular continuations: 4 ... ♖d7 (Chapter 1), 4 ... ♖f5 (Chapter 2), and 4 ... ♖f6 (Chapter 3). The continuation 4 ... e5? is less advisable (4 ... f5? is bad because of 5 ♖c3, and Black has seriously weakened his central squares), for example 5 ♖f3! ♖g4 (by playing 5 ... ed 6 ♗×d4, or 6 ♖c4 White

gains a distinct advantage in development) 6 ♖c4 ♖h5 7 g4! ♖g6 8 ♖×e5, and Black's prospects are poor.

The continuation 4 ... g6 leads to variations which are analysed in the publication "Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence and Scandinavian Opening".

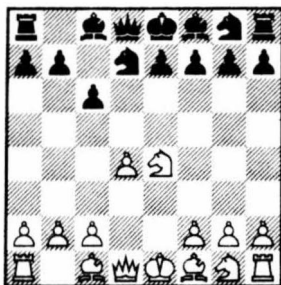
Chapter 1

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖d7

4 ... ♖b8-d7

The standard continuation. Black continues to mobilise his forces on both sides logically and purposefully, developing the plan ♖gf6, e6 and c6-c5; or, depending on the circumstances, first ♖e7, 0-0, b6, ♖b7, and then c6-c5. During these opening variations there are hardly any sharp tactical complications, each side being preoccupied primarily with solving the problem of his own development. Black's position, which is somewhat cramped but nonetheless solid, can be compared with an elastic spring ready to be released. As in other openings the choice of this system depends primarily on the player's style and taste, but extensive practical material shows that the system is acceptable for Black, and it is no coincidence that the system has been used and is used by a great number of strong chess players.

12 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4



White has now two main continuations at his disposal: 5 ♖f3 (I) and 5 ♖c4 (II).

But first let us look briefly at a few rare moves:

1) 5 ♖e2! ♖gf6 6 ♖2g3 e6 (or 6 ... g6 7 ♖c4 ♖g7 8 c3 0-0 9 0-0 ♖d5 with approximately equal play, Romanishin–Petrosian, USSR 1979) 7 ♖c4 ♖e7 8 0-0 ♖×e4 9 ♖×e4 ♖f6 10 ♖×f6+ ♖×f6 11 c3 0-0 12 ♖f4 b6 13 ♖d3 ♖b7 14 ♖f3 ♖c7 with approximate equality (Dementiev–Holmov, 37th USSR Championship, 1970).

2) 5 ♖d3 ♖gf6 6 ♖g5! (Black has no difficulties after 6 ♖×f6+ ♖×f6 7 c3 ♖g4) 6 ... e6 (6 ... h6 7 ♖e6 ♖a5+ 8 ♖d2 ♖b6 9 ♖f3 fe 10 ♖g6+ ♖d8 11 0-0 ♖c7, followed by b6 and ♖b7 leads to unclear play, Tal) 7 ♖1f3 (Black has no trouble after 7 f4 h6 8 ♖5f3 c5 9 c3 cd 10 cd ♖b4+, Filip; the continuation 7 ♖e2 h6 8 ♖f3 c5 9 0-0 ♖e7 10 ♖f4 has not been adequately analysed to date) 7 ... h6 8 ♖×e6! ♖e7 9 0-0 fe 10 ♖g6+ ♖d8 11 ♖f4 ♖b4 12 a3 ♖×b2

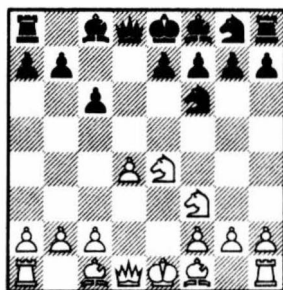
13 ♖e2 ♖d5 14 ♖d2 ♖d6 15 ♖×e6 ♖c7 16 ♖fb1, and White has a strong attack (Geller–Meduna, Sochi 1986). Better is 14 ... ♖b6.

3) 5 ♖e2! ♖ e6 (naturally not 5 ... ♖gf6?? 6 ♖d6 mate) 6 ♖f4 (or 6 ♖f3 ♖gf6 7 ♖×f6+ ♖×f6 8 g3 c5 with equality) 6 ... ♖df6 7 0-0-0 ♖×e4 8 ♖×e4 ♖f6 9 ♖f3 ♖a5, and Black has level play.

I

5 ♖g1–f3 ♖g8–f6

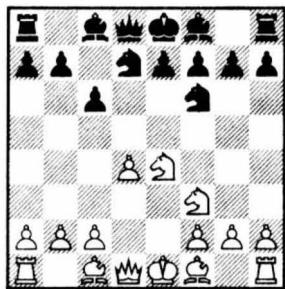
Sometimes 5 ... ♖df6! is played to open quickly the c8–h3 diagonal for the light-squared bishop.



This however disturbs of the harmonious placement the black pieces on the K-side giving White the better prospects. Events can now take the following course:

6 ♖eg5! (less energetic is 6 ♖c3 ♖g4 7 ♖e2 e6 8 h3 ♖×f3 9 ♖×f3 ♖d6 10 ♖d2 ♖e7 11 ♖e4 ♖f5 with equal chances; Shishov–Kasparian, USSR 1956; the game is also even after 6 ♖g3 ♖g4 7 ♖e2 e6 8 0-0 ♖e7 9 ♖e1 ♖g6, Rabar–Trifunović, Yugoslavia 1948;

or 6 ♖c5 e6 7 ♖d3 ♘d6 8 ♘f4 ♘×f4 9 ♖×f4 ♖e7 10 ♖d3 b6 followed by ♘b7, Trifunović–Matanović, Great Britain 1951) 6 ... ♘g4 (weak is 6 ... h6? 7 ♖×f7 ♗×f7 8 ♖e5+ ♗e8 9 ♘d3; White also retains a lasting advantage after 6 ... e6 7 ♖e5 ♖h6 8 ♘c4 ♘e7 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♗d3, Bogdanović–Bilek, Zagreb 1955, or 6 ... ♘f5 7 ♖e5 ♖h6 8 ♘c4 e6 9 f3, etc.) 7 ♘e2 ♘×f3 (8 ♖×f7! is the threat) 8 ♖×f3 e6 9 0-0 ♘d6 10 ♘g5 ♖e7 11 c4 ♖g6 12 d5 cd 13 cd, and White exerts strong pressure in the centre (Gligorić–Rabar, Yugoslavia 1948).



After 5 ... ♖gf6 White has two main lines:

6 ♖×f6+ (A) and 6 ♖g3 (B).

Let us first look at a number of less popular continuations:

1) 6 ♖c3 ♖b6 (the most precise line to achieve equality; another possibility is 6 ... e6 7 ♘d3 c5 8 ♗e2 cd 9 ♖×d4 ♘c5 10 ♖b3; Tal–Shamkovich, USSR 1972, and now Black is able to reach a sufficiently solid position with 10 ... ♘e7!; or

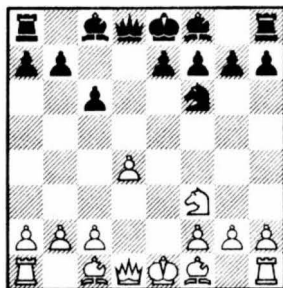
6 ... ♗c7 7 ♘d3 e6 8 0-0 ♘d6 9 ♖e1 0-0 10 ♗e2 ♘f4 11 ♖e4 ♘×c1 12 ♖a×c1 b6 13 ♖e5 with advantage in development and space for White; Smyslov–Füster, Moscow 1949) 7 ♘f4 (or 7 ♘e2 ♘f5 8 0-0 e6 9 ♖e1 ♘e7 10 h3 ♖bd5 with equal chances; Konstantinopolsky–Flohr, 16th USSR Championship, 1948) 7 ... ♘f5 8 ♘d3 ♘×d3 9 ♗×d3 e6 10 0-0 ♘e7 11 ♖fe1 0-0 12 ♖g5 h6 13 ♖ge4 ♖bd5, and the game is level (Antoshin–Flohr, 22nd USSR Championship, 1955).

2) 6 ♘d3 ♖×c4 7 ♘×e4 ♖f6 8 ♘d3 ♘g4 9 c3 e6 10 h3 ♘h5 11 ♘e2 ♘d6, and Black has no difficulties (G. Steiner–Flohr, Moscow 1946).

3) 6 ♖ed2 ♖b6 7 c3 ♘f5 8 ♖e5 e6, and here, too, Black has an excellent position.

A

6 ♖e4×f6+ ♖d7×f6



7 ♖f3–e5 ...

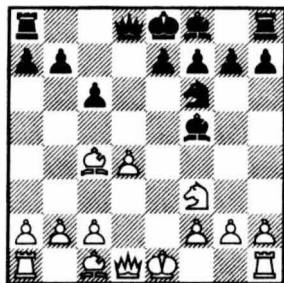
The most important reply. Other lines are also possible:

1) 7 g3! (a new, scarcely analysed continuation; White, instead of the usual attack on f7, exerts pressure on the Q-side, thus making the c6–c5 advance difficult) 7 ... ♘g4 (the game Mestel–Flesch, Berne 1977, went 7 ... g6 8 ♘g2 ♙a5+ 9 c3 ♘f5? 10 0-0 ♘e4 11 ♖e1 ♘g7 12 ♙b3 0-0 13 ♘f4!, and White had a strong initiative; necessary was 9 ... ♙a6!, for example 10 ♙e2 ♙×e2+ 11 ♙×e2 ♘e6 with roughly equal play) 8 ♘g2 g6 (in Sax–Christian–sen, Tallinn 1979, White won the exchange after 8 ... e6 9 c3 ♘e7 10 ♙b3 ♙d5? 11 ♙×b7 ♘×f3 12 ♙×a8+ ♙d8 13 ♘×f3 ♙×f3 14 0-0 h5 15 ♙b8 h4) 9 c3 (9 0-0 ♘g7 10 h3 ♘×f3 11 ♙×f3 deserves consideration, with a small but lasting advantage for White) 9 ... ♘g7 10 h3 ♘×f3 11 ♙×f3 ♙d5! 12 0-0 ♙×f3 13 ♘×f3 0-0-0, and the game is level (Byrne–Benkö, USA 1978).

2) 7 ♘c4 ♘f5 (somewhat passive but sufficiently sound is 7 ... e6 8 0-0 ♘e7 9 ♙e2 0-0 10 c3 b6 11 ♘f4 ♘b7 12 ♖ad1 ♙c8, and Black achieves the freeing move c6–c5), and now:

(see diagram)

2a) 8 ♖e5 e6 9 0-0 (9 g4! ♘g6! 10 h4 ♖d7 11 ♘f4 ♖×e5 12 ♘×e5 h5 gives Black comfortable counterplay) 9 ... ♘d6 10 ♙e2 0-0 11 ♘g5 ♙c7! 12 ♖ad1 b5 13 ♘d3 ♖d5 14 ♖f3 ♘×d3



15 ♙×d3 c5 with equal prospects (Spassky–Ilivitsky, Sochi 1965).

2b) 8 ♙e2 e6 9 ♘f4 (9 ♘g5 deserves consideration) 9 ... ♘g7 10 0-0-0 0-0 11 ♘d3 ♘×d3 12 ♙×d3 ♖d5 13 ♘d2 a5! 14 ♙b1 ♖b4 15 ♙c4 ♙d5 16 ♙×d5 cd 17 a4? ♘d6 18 ♖e1 ♖fb8 19 c3 ♖c6 20 ♖d3 b5, and the end-game gives a clear advantage to Black (Stolberg–Smyslov, 12th USSR Championship, 1940).

2c) 8 0-0 e6 9 h3 (worth consideration is 9 ♘g5 ♘e7 10 ♙e2 ♘g4 11 ♖ad1 0-0 12 h3 ♘×f3 13 ♙×f3 ♖d5 14 ♘e3! ♘g5 15 ♘b3 with a slight pressure from White; the game Balashov–Kharitonov, USSR 1983, continued 9 ♖e5 ♘d6 10 ♖e1 ♙c7 11 ♘f4 0-0 12 ♘b3 ♖ad8 13 ♙f3 ♖g4! 14 c3 c5 with equal chances) 9 ... ♘e7 10 ♖e1 0-0 11 ♖h4 (in Bakulin–Sokolov, USSR 1973, the chances were even after 11 c3 c5 12 ♘g5 ♙c7 13 ♙e2 ♖ad8 14 ♖ad1 ♘e4! 15 ♖e5 cd 16 cd ♘d5) 11 ... ♘e4! 12 ♘g5 ♘d5 13 ♘b3 ♘×b3 (the game Hennings–Spiridonov, Sochi 1973, went 13 ...

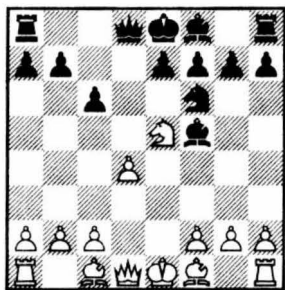
a5? 14 c3 h6 15 ♖e3 ♖e4 16 ♖f3 ♖d5 17 ♖d2 ♖h7 18 ♖c2 ♖×c2 19 ♖×c2 ♖c7 20 ♖ad1 a4 21 ♖c1 ♖fd8 22 c4, and White stands well; not bad, however, is 13 ... c5 14 dc ♖×c5 15 ♖×d5 ♖×d5 16 ♖×f6 ♖×d1 17 ♖a×d1 gf with equalised play) 14 ab ♖d5, and Black has equality.

3) 7 c3 ♖g4! 8 ♖e2 e6 9 h3 (or 9 0-0 ♖e7 10 ♖f4 0-0 11 ♖e1 ♖d5 12 ♖g3 ♖×f3 13 ♖×f3 ♖d6 with equal chances; Boleslavsky-Kotov, Saltsjöbaden 1948) 9 ... ♖h5 10 ♖e5 ♖×e2 11 ♖×e2 ♖d6 12 ♖g5 ♖c7 13 0-0 ♖d7, and Black has no trouble (Pilnik-Petrosian, Amsterdam 1956).

7 ... ♖c8-e6

The modern variation, but other black continuations are possible:

1) 7 ... ♖f5



This move was regarded as the main continuation until recently. It has now become clear that in view of White's tactical threat Black needs to overcome quite a number of difficulties on the a2-g8 diagonal.

8 c3 ♖d7 (in Karpov-Spassky, Bad Kissingen 1980, White had a slight advantage after 8 ... ♖g6! 9 h4 ♖d7 10 ♖c4 — 10 ♖×g6 — 10 ... h5 11 ♖g5 — 11 ♖f4! 7 — 11 ... f6 12 ♖f4 b5 13 ♖d3 ♖f7; not good is 8 ... e6 9 g4 ♖g6 10 h4 ♖d6 11 ♖e2! c5 12 ♖g2 cd 13 h5 dc 14 ♖b5+ ♖f8 15 hg, Ćirić, or 11 ... ♖×e5 12 de ♖d5 13 ♖h3! ♖×g4 14 ♖×g4 ♖×e5 15 ♖e3 ♖a5 16 ♖g5! ♖b6 17 h5 with a clear advantage for White, Mecking-Miles, Wijk aan Zee 1978) 9 ♖×f7! (this is the most precise way to play; 9 ♖f4 e6 with a sound black position does not promise White anything) 9 ... ♖×f7 10 ♖f3 e6 (bad is 10 ... ♖g6 11 g4 ♖c2 12 ♖e2, and White wins) 11 g4 ♖f6 12 gf ♖×f5 13 ♖e3! 7 (also good is 13 ♖×f5+ ef 14 ♖c4+ ♖f6 15 ♖g1 ♖e8+ 16 ♖f1 h6 17 h4, and White has a positional advantage) 13 ... c5 (Spassky-Donner, San Juan 1969, went 13 ... ♖f6 14 ♖d3 ♖d5 15 f3 ♖d6 16 ♖e2 with some initiative for White) 14 ♖h3 cd 15 cd ♖b4+ 16 ♖f1 ♖b5+ 17 ♖g1 ♖he8 18 ♖b3 ♖b6 19 ♖e3 ♖f8 20 ♖g2, and White has a slight advantage (Kaválek-Barcza, Caracas 1971).

2) 7 ... ♖d7. A solid defensive move giving rise to the following variations:

2a) 8 ♖f4 ♖×e5 9 ♖×e5 ♖f5! 10 ♖c4 e6 11 0-0 ♖d6 12 ♖e2 0-0

16 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♗×e4

13 ♖ad1 ♗e7, and after ♖ad8 the game is level.

2b) 8 ♗d3 g6 (8 ... ♗f6 9 c3 g6 10 ♖e2 ♖g7 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♖f3 ♖f5 is probably sufficient, too) 9 ♖e3 (or 9 c3 ♖g7 10 ♖f4 ♗a5 11 ♗d2 0-0 12 ♖e2 e5 13 de ♗×e5 14 ♗×e5 ♖×e5 15 ♖g5 ♖e6 16 0-0 ♖g7 with Black in a solid position, Karpov–Sosonko, Amsterdam 1980) 9 ... ♖g7 10 ♗d2 ♗b6! (10 ... e5 11 ♖h6!) 11 ♗e5 ♖e6 12 ♖e2 0-0 13 0-0-0 f6 14 ♗d3 ♗c4 15 ♗c3 ♗×e3 16 fe ♖d5 17 ♗f4 ♖h6 with approximately equal play (Timman–Korchnoi, 1985).

2c) 8 ♖e3! ♗×e5 9 de ♖f5 (9 ... ♗a5+ 10 ♗d2 ♗×e5?! — better is 10 ... ♗×d2+ — 11 0-0-0!) 10 ♗×d8+ ♖×d8 11 ♖×a7 ♖×c2 12 ♖b6 ♖a8 13 ♖c4 e6 14 f3 ♖a4 15 b3 ♖b4+ 16 ♗e2 ♖a3 17 ♖d4 0-0, and the position is completely even (Sokolov–Karpov, match 1987).

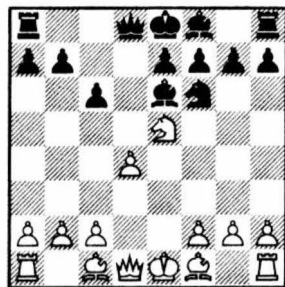
Harmless is 8 ♗×d7 ♖×d7 9 ♖d3 e6 10 0-0 ♖d6 with easy equality for Black.

3) 7 ... g6 8 ♖c4 ♗d5 9 0-0 ♖g7 10 ♗c2 0-0 11 ♖b3 a5 12 a3 ♗b6 13 ♖d1 ♖e6 14 ♖a2, and the initiative is on White's side (Zakharov–Fisch, Varna 1968).

(see diagram)

After 7 ... ♖c6 the following variations arise:

1) 8 ♖e2 g6 9 0-0 ♖g7 10 c4 0-0



11 ♖e3 ♗e4! (after 11 ... ♗e8 12 ♗b3! — interesting is 12 f4! — 12 ... ♗d6 13 ♖ad1 ♗c8 14 ♗c3 ♖d8 15 h3 f6 16 ♗f3 ♗d7 17 ♖fe1 ♖e8 18 ♖f1 ♖f7 19 ♖c1 White obtains a slight advantage, Grünfeld; Belyavsky–Korchnoi, Montpellier 1985, went 11 ... ♗d7 12 ♗f3 ♗f6! 13 h3 ♗e4 14 ♗c1 b5! 15 cb cb 16 ♖×b5 ♖d5 with equal play for Black) 12 ♗c2 ♗d6 13 b3 c5! (less energetic is 13 ... ♗f5 14 ♗e4 ♗×e3 15 fe with better prospects for White) 14 ♖ad1 ♗f5 15 d5 (15 dc ♗×e3 16 fe ♗a5 17 ♗d3 ♖f5 is favourable for Black) 15 ... ♖×e5 16 de ♗c7 17 ef+ ♖×f7 18 g3 ♖af8, and Black has excellent play (Sokolov–Karpov, match 1987).
2) 8 c3 g6 9 ♖d3 ♖g7 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♗e2 c5 12 dc ♗c7 13 c6 bc 14 ♖c1 ♖ab8 15 ♖c4 ♖d5 with equal play (Timoshchenko–Rasuvayev, USSR 1971).

B

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♗c3 de 4 ♗×e4 ♗d7 5 ♗f3 ♗g6)

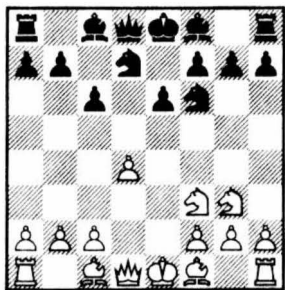
6 ♖e4-g3 e7-e6

Apart from this, the most important reply, Black has the following possibilities:

1) 6 ... c5 7 ♖c4! (Black obtains the advantage after 7 d5?! ♖b6 8 ♖b5+ ♖d7 9 ♖x d7+ ♗x d7 10 c4 ♖x c4 11 0-0 g6 12 ♗c2 ♖d6, Tal-Savon, USSR 1970) 7 ... b5?! (better is 7 ... cd) 8 ♖e2 ♖b7 9 0-0 c4 10 a4 a6 11 b3 ♖d5 12 ♖e5, and White has a strong initiative (Timoshchenko-Rasuvayev, USSR 1972).

2) 6 ... h5?! 7 ♖d3! e6 8 ♗e2 c5 9 ♖g5 ♗a5+ 10 ♗d2 ♗b6 11 0-0-0 cd 12 ♖he1 ♖c5 13 c3! dc 14 ♖x c3 with unpleasant white threats on the K-side (Gurgenidze-Kopylov, USSR 1958).

3) 6 ... g6 7 h4 h5 8 ♖c4 ♖g7 9 ♗d3 e6 10 ♖g5, and White's pressure makes itself felt (Levenfish-Ravinsky, USSR 1928).



7 ♖f1-d3 ...

Other possible lines are:

1) 7 ♖c4 ♖b6 (other moves are weaker: 7 ... ♖e7 8 ♗e2 0-0 9 0-0 c5 10 ♖d1; 7 ... c5 8 dc ♖x c5

9 0-0 0-0 10 ♗e2 b6 11 ♖e4 ♖e7 12 ♖d1 ♗c7 13 ♖eg5 ♖c5 14 ♖e5, Boleslavsky; 7 ... ♖d6 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♗e2 ♗c7 10 ♖e4 ♖f4 11 ♖x f6+ ♖x f6 12 ♖x f4 ♗x f4 13 ♖ad1 b6 14 ♖e5, Boleslavsky-A. Zaitsev, USSR 1969; in all other quoted variations White has the advantage) 8 ♖b3 c5 9 c3 ♗c7 (with 9 ... cd 10 ♖x d4 ♖e7 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♗f3! ♗c7 13 ♖e1 and also with ♖f4 White retains a small initiative) 10 dc (10 0-0 c4! 10 ... ♖bd7 (after 10 ... ♖x c5 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♗c2 ♖d7 13 ♖g5 White has slight pressure) 11 ♗e2 ♖x c5 12 ♖c2 ♖e7 13 ♖e5 0-0 14 0-0 b6 and Black equalises easily (Filip).

2) 7 c3 c5 8 ♖d3 cd 9 ♖x d4 ♖e7 10 0-0 ♖c5 11 ♖c2 ♖d7, and Black has no difficulties (Bronstein-Petrosian, Moscow 1967).

3) 7 ♖e2 c5 8 0-0 cd 9 ♗x d4 ♖e7 10 ♖f4 0-0 11 c4 b6 12 ♖e4 ♖b7 13 ♖c3 (Westerinen-Christiansen, Wijk aan Zee 1976), and now Black was able to achieve complete equality by playing 13 ♖c5!

7 ... c6-c5

The most active reply. But there are other lines at Black's disposal:

1) 7 ... ♖e7 8 0-0 (worth noting is 8 ♗e2!? 0-0 9 ♖g5 c5 10 0-0-0 cd — in a game Balinas-Filip, 1974 Olympiad, White had the initiative after 10 ... ♖c8 11 ♖b1 cd 12 ♖c4 ♗b6 13 ♖x d4 — 11 ♖b1

♖c5 — 11 ♗a5 may be better — 12 ♖×d4 ♖×d3 13 ♜×d3, and Black finds himself in a rather difficult position; Jovčić-Ćirić, Yugoslavia 1971) 8 ... 0-0 (8 ... c5 9 ♜e1 b6 10 c4! cd 11 ♖×d4 ♖b7 12 ♖df5! gives White a dangerous initiative) 9 ♗e2 (with 9 c3 c5 10 ♖e5 cd 11 cd ♖b6 12 ♖g5 ♖bd5, Becker-Döry, Vienna 1918; or 9 c4 c5 10 b3 b6 11 ♖b2 ♖b7 12 ♗e2 ♜e8 13 ♜ad1 ♗c7 14 ♖b1 ♖f8, Spassky-Ćirić, Sochi 1965, Black has a solid defensive position) 9 ... c5 (not so active is 9 ... b6 10 ♖f4 ♖b7 11 ♜ad1 c5 12 dc ♖×c5 13 ♖e5 with a strong white initiative) 10 dc (if 10 ♜d1 ♗c7 11 c4 ♜e8 12 dc ♖×c5, Tal-Ćirić, Budva 1967, or 10 c3 b6 11 ♜e1 ♖b7 12 ♖e5 cd 13 cd ♖d5, Kashdan-Kotov, Moscow 1946, the chances are equal) 10 ... ♖×c5 11 ♖c4 b6 12 ♜d1 ♗c7 13 ♖e5 ♖b7, and Black achieves equal play (Filip).

2) 7 ... ♖d6 8 0-0 ♗c7 9 ♜e1 0-0 10 b3 c5 11 dc ♖×c5 12 ♖c4 b6 13 ♖b2 ♖b7 14 ♖×f6 gf 15 ♖h5! with a dangerous white attack (Ćirić-Rodriguez, 1968 Olympiad).

8 0-0 c5×d4

In Spassky-Yanofsky (Winnipeg 1967) White obtained a slight advantage after 8 ... ♖e7 9 c4 cd 10 ♖×d4 ♖e5 11 ♖e2 0-0 12 ♖f4 ♖g6 13 ♖e3 a6 14 a3 ♗c7 15 b4.

White will also get the better prospects after 8 ... ♗c7 9 c3 ♖d6

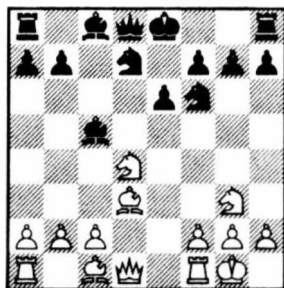
10 ♜e1 0-0 11 ♗e2 b6 12 ♖c5 ♖b7 13 ♖g5! (Gurgenidze-Bagirov, Tbilisi 1980).

9 ♖f3×d4 ♖f8-c5

Black continues the fight actively. Other continuations are:

1) 9 ... ♖e7 10 b3 0-0 11 ♖b2 ♖c5 12 ♖c4! ♖d7 13 ♗e2 ♗b6 14 ♜ad1 ♜fe8 15 ♖f3 with a clear advantage to White (Bradvarević-Trifunović, Yugoslavia 1964).

2) 9 ... ♖c5 10 ♖c4! ♖e7 11 b3 0-0 12 ♖b2, and White is able to exert some pressure (Filip).



10 ♖d4-f3 ...

Apart from this manoeuvre White can choose between the following lines:

1) 10 c3 ♖×d4! (White obtains a minimal advantage with 10 ... 0-0 11 ♖h5 a6 12 ♜e1 ♖e7 13 ♖g5 ♖×h5 14 ♗×h5 g6 15 ♖×e7, Ivkov-Filip, Beverwijk 1964) 11 cd 0-0, and Black has a solid defensive position.

2) 10 ♖b3 ♖b6 11 ♖h5 ♖×h5 12 ♗×h5 ♖f6 13 ♗h4 ♖d7, and Black has nothing to worry about (Bilek-Smyslov, 1964 Olympiad).

3) 10 ♖e3 0-0 11 ♗e2 ♗d5
 12 ♖ad1 ♗×e3 13 ♖e g6 14 ♗e4
 ♖e7, with better prospects for Black
 (Cherepkov–Petrosian, 28th USSR
 Championship, 1960).

10 ... 0-0

11 ♗d1–e2 ...

A game Spassky–Filip (1974
 Olympiad) continued 11 b3 b6
 12 ♖b2 ♖b7 13 ♗e2 ♗c7, and
 Black has a solid position.

11 ... b7–b6

The most flexible move. After
 11 ... ♗c7 12 ♗e4 ♖e7 13 ♖g5
 b6 14 ♖ad1 White maintains some
 initiative.

12 ♖c1–f4 ♖c8–b7

13 ♖a1–d1 ♗d8–c8

A game Tal–Vasyukov (33rd USSR
 Championship, 1965) continued
 13 ... ♗d5? 14 ♖g5 ♗c7 15 ♗h5!
 ♗h8 16 ♖e4 ♖f6 17 ♖h4 ♖d6
 18 c4 ♖a6 19 ♗×g7! with a strong
 attack by White.

14 ♗g1–h1 a7–a6

Black has a secure position with
 good chances of equalising (Boles-
 lavsky).

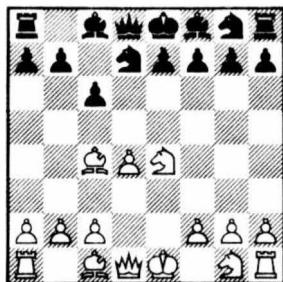
II

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♗c3 de 4 ♗×e4
 ♗d7)

5 ♖f1–c4

(see diagram)

Although the elaboration of this
 continuation has started only re-
 cently, its theory has immediately
 developed an impetus. Currently it



enjoys immense popularity and the
 theoretical discussion centering on it
 continues unabated. White's idea
 consists in the rapid organisation of
 pressure on the a2–g8 diagonal
 against the critical f7 and e6 squares,
 and it includes a number of tactical
 threats. With correct play Black is
 able to defend himself successfully
 against the white attack. The result-
 ing struggle leads to the sort of posi-
 tion of forces similar to that seen in
 the previous section. (The play has,
 of course, its peculiarities. White's
 minor pieces are in a slightly differ-
 ent position, Black usually playing
 h7–h6). Practice shows that Black
 has a sufficiently solid position, al-
 though the struggle is complex and
 full of tactical refinement.

5 ... ♗g8–f6

The main continuation for Black.
 The following lines are also possible:
 1) 5 ... ♗df6 6 ♗g5 ♗h6 (after
 6 ... ♗d5 7 ♗1f3 ♖f5 8 g4 ♖g6
 9 ♗e5 ♖f6 10 ♗×g6 hg 11 ♗e4 e6
 12 c3 ♖d6 13 ♗e2 Black finds him-
 self in a difficult position with his K-
 side seriously weakened; Lutikov–

Vasilyev, USSR 1962) 7 ♖1f3 ♜g4 (after 7 ... e6 8 c3 ♜e7 9 ♜e2 0-0 10 h4 c5 11 ♜e3 ♖d5 12 ♜e2 White's prospects are clearly better, Shamkovich-Livzhin, USSR 1961) 8 c3 e6 9 h3 ♜×f3 10 ♜×f3 ♖d5 11 ♜d2 ♜f6 12 ♜e2 ♖f4 13 ♜e4, with a lasting white advantage (Vasyukov-Livzhin, Kharkov 1956).

2) 5 ... ♖b6 6 ♜b3 ♜f5 (or 6 ... ♖f6 7 ♖×f6+ cf 8 ♜h5! with white superiority; Hamann-Yanofsky, Natanya 1969) 7 ♖g3 ♜g6 8 h4 h6 9 ♖f3 e6 10 ♖e5 ♜h7 11 ♜e2 ♜e7 12 ♜d2 ♖f6 13 0-0-0 a5 14 a3 a4 15 ♜a2 ♖bd5 16 ♜de1 ♜c7 17 c4 ♖b6 18 ♜f4, and White exerts strong pressure (Liberson-Karasyev, 38th USSR Championship, 1970).

6 ♖e4-g5 ...

This manoeuvre is the start of White's active plan. Black needs to play very carefully in order to parry the tactical threats.

6 ♖×f6+ ♖×f6 7 c3 e6 is also played (in a game Balashov-Kharitonov, USSR 1984, White achieved some pressure after 7 ... ♜c7 8 ♖e2 e6 9 ♜f4 ♜d6 10 ♜×d6 ♜×d6 11 ♜d3 0-0 12 ♜g3 ♜e7 13 0-0 c5 14 ♜fe1 cd 15 ♖×d4 ♜c5 16 ♜b3 ♜d7 17 ♜c5) 8 ♖f3 c5 9 ♜g5 cd 10 ♖×d4 a6 11 0-0 ♜c7 12 ♜e2 0-0 13 ♜ad1 ♜c7 14 ♜b3 ♖d5 with approximate equality (Geller-Kislov, USSR 1971). Spassky-Pfleger (Munich 1979) continued 6 ... ef 7 ♖e2 ♖b6 (7 ...

♜d6 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♜f4 ♖b6 10 ♜d3 ♜e6 11 c3 ♖d5 12 ♜×d6 ♜×d6 13 ♜d2 gives White a slight advantage) 8 ♜b3 ♜d6 9 c4 ♜c7 10 ♜f4 0-0 11 ♜×c7 ♜×c7 12 c5? (12 0-0) 12 ... ♖d7 13 0-0, and here Black was able to equalise with 13 ... ♜d8! 14 ♜c2 ♖f8 and ♜e6.

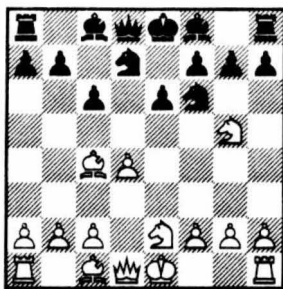
6 ... e7-e6

One may also come across 6 ... ♖d5, e. g. 7 ♖1f3 (Honfi-Reschko, Hungary 1961, continued 7 b3 h6 8 ♖5f3 ♖7f6 9 ♖e2 ♜f5 10 ♖g3 ♜h7 11 0-0 e6 12 c4 ♖b6 13 ♜f4 ♜e7 14 ♜e2 with a slight but lasting white advantage) 7 ... h6 (Black faces a difficult end-game after 7 ... a6 8 ♜e2 h6 9 ♖e4 ♜c7 10 ♜×d5 cd 11 ♖c3 ♜c4 12 ♜×c4 dc 13 ♖d5, Schmid-Hönlinger, FRG 1955) 8 ♖e4 ♖7b6 (also after 8 ... e6 9 ♜e2 ♜c7 10 0-0 ♜e7 11 ♜b3 0-0 12 c4, Rooze-Dunkelblum, Belgium 1966, or 8 ... ♖7f6 9 ♖×f6+ gf 10 ♜b3 ♜c7 11 c4, Kaválek-Perez, 1964 Olympiad, White's position is clearly preferable) 9 ♜b3 ♜f5 10 ♖g3 (also good is 10 ♜e2 e6 11 0-0 ♜e7 12 ♖e5, Dückstein-Bouwmeester, Switzerland 1962) 10 ... ♜g4 (or 10 ... ♜h7 11 0-0 e6 12 ♖e5 ♖d7 13 c4 ♖5f6 14 ♜f4 ♖×e5 15 ♜×e5 ♜d6, Fischer-Portisch, Stockholm 1962, and here White was able to retain some initiative with 16 ♜f3) 11 h3 ♜×f3 12 ♜×f3 g6 13 ♜d2 a5 14 a3 a4 15 ♜a2 ♜g7

16 0-0-0 0-0 17 h4, and in view of his attacking position on the K-side White's prospects are clearly better (Suetin-Bronstein, 31st USSR Championship, 1963).

7 ♖d1-e2 ...

Another rather popular continuation is 7 ♖e2, from which the following variations may arise:



7 ... h6 (if 7 ... ♖b6 8 ♖b3 c5 9 c3 ♖e7 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♖e1 ♖bd5 12 dc ♖xc5 13 ♖d4 ♖b6 14 ♖g3 ♖d8 15 ♖g5 White has the better chances) 8 ♖f3 ♖d6 (Bronstein-Vasyukov, 32nd USSR Championship, 1965, continued 8 ... b5? 9 ♖d3! ♖b7 10 c3 ♖b6 11 a4 a5 12 ab cb 13 ♖g3 ♖d6 14 ♖e2 0-0 15 ♖e5 ♖fd8 16 f4 and White has a clear advantage) 9 0-0 ♖c7 10 ♖e1 0-0 11 ♖c3 b5 (after 11 ... a6 12 ♖e4 b5 13 ♖xd6 ♖xd6 14 ♖f1 c5 15 dc ♖xd1 16 ♖xd1 ♖xc5 17 ♖e3, Geller-Smyslov, USSR 1964, or 11 ... ♖d5 12 ♖e4 ♖f4 13 ♖xf4 ♖xf4 14 ♖g3 — also good is 14 ♖f1 — 14 ... b6 15 ♖e5 ♖xe5 16 ♖xe5 ♖h4 17 ♖d2 ♖b7 18 ♖ae1, the advan-

tage is clearly on White's side, Boleslavsky) 12 ♖d3 ♖b7 13 ♖e4 ♖xe4 14 ♖xe4 c5, and Black successfully overcomes his opening difficulties.

7 ... ♖d7-b6

Black needs to do something to defend the e6 and f7 squares. 7 ... ♖e7, for example is impossible because of 8 ♖xf7! Advantageous for White is also 7 ... ♖d5 8 ♖1f3 ♖e7 9 0-0 h6 10 ♖e4 0-0 11 ♖b3 (Tarve-Randvir, Estonian SSR, 1961).

After 7 ... ♖b6 White is able to choose between 8 ♖b3 (A) and 8 ♖d3 (B).

A

8 ♖c4-b3 ...

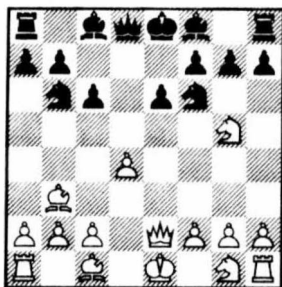
Consistent. White leaves the bishop on the a2-g8 diagonal, in order to build up an attack on the K-side. If, however, Black is able to parry White's tactical threats the restricted mobility of the bishop on b3 will become the handicap of this system. Initially Black must act very carefully. 8 ... ♖xd4? 9 ♖1f3 is bad, and it is difficult to fend off the threat 10 ♖e5.

(see diagram)

8 ... h7-h6

A natural reaction. Black wishes to push back quickly the white outpost, the g5-knight. In addition, the following variations may arise:

1) 8 ... c5 9 ♖1f3 (White does not

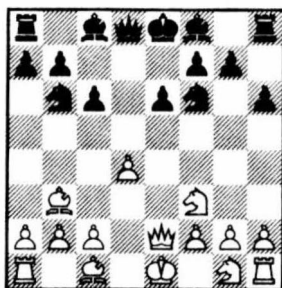


achieve anything with 9 ♖e3 ♔c7! 10 c3 ♖d7 11 0-0-0 c4 12 ♖c2 ♖bd5 with equal play; Neukirch-Starck, German Democratic Republic 1962; worthy of consideration however is 9 dc ♖×c5 10 ♖1f3 ♖d7 11 ♖d2 h6 12 ♖e4 and White has a slight but lasting advantage; in Byrne-Mednis, USA 1984, the reply to 10 ♖1f3 was 10 ... h6 11 ♖e4 ♖×e4 12 ♔×e4 ♖d5! 13 ♖e5 0-0 14 ♖d2 with a minimal advantage to White) 9 ... cd (after 9 ... h6 10 dcl ♖×c5 11 ♖e4 ♖×e4 12 ♔×e4 0-0 13 ♖d2 followed by 0-0-0 White has the better chances) 10 0-0 ♖e7 11 ♖d1 with excellent piece play and prospects for White to obtain the initiative.

2) 8 ... ♖e7 9 ♖1f3 0-0 10 ♖d2 a5 (Parma-Donner, Beverwijk 1963). After 11 c4 a4 12 ♖c2 and 13 ♖c3 White extends his pressure in the centre.

3) 8 ... ♖bd5 9 ♖d2 a5 10 c4 a4 11 ♖d1 ♖c7 12 ♖1f3 h6 13 ♖e4 ♖e7 14 ♖c2 b5 15 c5, and Black's position is difficult (Spassky-Perez, 1964 Olympiad).

9 ♖g5-f3



Black has now the main plans 9 ... c5 (a) and 9 ... a5 (b) to choose between.

Other possibilities are:

1) 9 ... ♖e7 10 ♖d2 (in Tal-Benkö, Amsterdam 1964, White played 10 ♖h3!?, and Filip recommends 10 ... g5!?) 10 ... a5 (risky is 10 ... 0-0?! 11 0-0-0 followed by ♖e5 and g4 with a white attack) 11 c4 0-0 12 ♖h3 c5 13 dc ♖×c5 14 0-0-0 ♔e7 15 ♖e5 ♖bd7 16 f4, and White has good prospects for an attack on the K-side (Khasin-Livzhin, USSR 1958).

2) 9 ... ♖d6 10 ♖e5 ♔e7 11 ♖gf3 c5 (also after 11 ... ♖d7 12 ♖d2 c5 13 dc ♖×c5 14 0-0 a6 15 a3 ♖c8 16 c4 White has the better game) 12 ♖e3 0-0 13 g4 ♖fd5 14 ♖d2 cd 15 g5 with the initiative on White's side (Yurkov-Chistyakov, USSR 1962).

a

9 ... c6-c5

Now White can choose between

two main lines: 10 ♖e3 (1) and 10 ♖f4 (2).

Also possible is 10 dc ♖bd7 (after 10 ... ♖×c5 11 ♖d2 0-0 — better is 11 ... ♗c7!? — 12 ♖e5 ♖bd5 13 ♖gf3 b6 14 0-0-0 ♗e7 15 g4! Black has a difficult game; Trapl–Perez, Oberhausen 1961) 11 c6!? bc 12 ♖h3 ♖e7 (12 ... ♖d6 13 ♖e3 ♗c7 14 0-0-0 0-0 15 g4 ♖×g4 16 ♜hg1 ♖df6 17 ♖b1 e5 18 ♖c1 leaves White the better chances, Ciocaltea–Barcza, Debrecen 1961) 13 0-0 ♗b6 14 ♖f4 ♖a6 15 c4 c5 16 ♖d3 0-0 17 ♖de5 ♜fd8 18 ♖c2 ♖b7 19 b3 ♖f8, and Black has equalised and has a sound defensive position (Suetin–Petrosian, Moscow 1959).

Dvoiris–Kharitonov (USSR 1984) continued 10 c3 ♗c7 11 ♖e3 ♖d6?! (better is 11 ... ♖bd5) 12 dc ♖×c5 13 ♖×c5 ♗×c5 14 ♖e5, with White exerting some pressure.

1

10 ♖c1–e3 ♗d8–c7

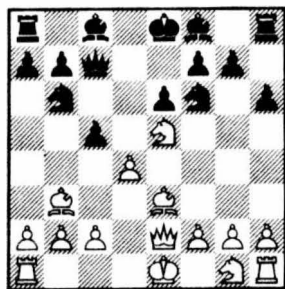
Another continuation is 10 ... a6!? A game Jansa–Pacl (Czechoslovakia 1984) continued 11 dcl (11 0-0-0 c4!) 11 ... ♖bd7 12 c6! bc 13 0-0-0 ♗c7 14 ♖h3 ♖d6 15 ♖d2! with better prospects for White.

11 ♖f3–e5

(see diagram)

11 ... a7–a6

The following lines are also possible:



1) 11 ... ♖d6 12 ♖gf3 0-0 13 0-0 (13 g4 ♖fd7!) 13 ... a5 (not bad is 13 ... ♖bd5 14 c3 b6 15 ♜ad1 ♖b7 with approximately equal play, Spassky–Benkö, Amsterdam 1964) 14 c4 ♖bd7 15 ♖×d7 ♖×d7 with equality (Stein–Smyslov, USSR 1964).

2) 11 ... ♖d7 12 ♖gf3 ♜c8 13 c4 cd 14 ♖×d4 ♖b4+ 15 ♖f1 ♖c5 16 ♖e3 ♖c6 17 ♖×c6 ♗×c6 18 ♖e5 (Kupreichik–Petrosian, 37th USSR Championship, 1969). Black was able to equalise with 18 ... ♗c7!

3) 11 ... cd 12 ♖×d4 ♖c5 13 ♖gf3 0-0 14 0-0-0 a5 15 a3 a4 16 ♖a2, and White's position is slightly better (Spassky–Pfleger, Tallinn 1973).

4) 11 ... a5?! 12 a3 a4 13 ♖a2 ♖d6 14 ♖gf3 ♖bd7 15 ♖f4 0-0 16 ♜d1 b6 17 ♖c4 ♖d5 18 ♖g3 ♖b7 19 ♖b5 ♖7f6 20 dc bc 21 c4 ♖e7 22 ♜×d6! ♗×d6 23 ♖d7 with a strong white attack on the K-side (Kaválek–Bukić, 1979).

24 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4

12 ♖g1-f3 ♖b6-d5

13 0-0 ...

13 0-0-0 deserves consideration.

13 ... ♖f8-d6

14 ♖e5-c4 ♖d6-e7

15 d4×c5 ♖e7×c5

16 ♖e3×c5 ♗c7×c5

Gheorghiu-Filip (1964 Olympiad) continued 17 a4 0-0 18 a5 ♖d7 19 ♖ce5 ♜fd8 20 ♜fd1 ♖e8 with equal prospects.

2

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖d7 5 ♖c4 ♖gf6 6 ♖g5 e6 7 ♗e2 ♖b6 8 ♖b3 h6 9 ♖5f3 c5)

10 ♖c1-f4 ...



This continuation was recommended by the author in the early sixties. 10 ... cd is now followed by 11 0-0-0!; and White obtains excellent prospects for an active development of pieces. Black's task is to restrict the activity of the opponent's minor pieces.

10 ... ♖b6-d5!

11 ♖f4-e5 ♗d8-a5+

12 ♖f3-d2 ...

Naturally 12 c3? ♖×c3 13 ♗d4 ♖f4 is not to be recommended for White.

13 ... c5×d4

Boleslavsky recommended the following interesting variation: 12 ... b5 13 c4 bc 14 ♖×c4 cd 15 ♖f3 ♖e7 16 ♖×d4 ♖d7 17 0-0 0-0 18 a3 with slight advantage to White.

13 ♖g1-f3 ...

13 0-0-0 can be effectively countered by 13 ... b5! 14 ♖gf3 ♖c3! 15 bc dc, and White's position is poor.

13 ... ♖f8-e7

14 0-0 0-0

15 ♖f3×d4 ♖c8-d7

16 a2-a3 ♗a5-c5

17 c2-c4 ♖d5-f4

18 ♖e5×f4 ♗c5×d4

Black has an equal position (Suetin-Filip, Sochi 1973).

b

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖d7 5 ♖c4 ♖gf6 6 ♖g5 e6 7 ♗e2 ♖b6 8 ♖b3 h6 9 ♖5f3)

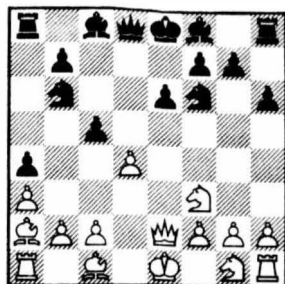
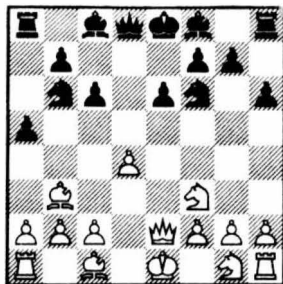
9 ... a7-a5

This flank operation is definitely appropriate here. Black restricts the mobility of his opponent's light-squared bishop and, in anticipation of White castling on the Q-side, activates his forces on the Q-side.

(see diagram)

10 a2-a3 ...

The most popular continuation. Other possible lines are:



1) 10 a4 c5 11 ♖f4 ♖d6 12 ♖g3 (in Tal–Petrosian, 41st USSR Championship, 1973, Black achieved excellent counterplay after 12 ♖e5 0-0 13 0-0-0?!) c4 14 ♖×c4 ♖×a4 15 ♖h3 ♖b6 16 g4 a4! 17 g5 hg 18 ♖h×g5 a3 19 b3 ♖b4!) 12 ... ♖×g3 13 hg ♖c7?! (13 ... 0-0) 14 ♖e5 cd 15 ♖gf3 0-0 16 g4 d3 17 ♖×d3 ♖bd7 18 ♖×d7 ♖×d7 19 ♖×d7 ♖×d7 20 ♖e5 with pressure from White (M. Tseitlin–Spiridonov, Bulgaria 1985).

2) 10 c4?! a4 11 ♖c2 ♖b4+.

3) 10 c3 a4 11 ♖c2 ♖d5.

In both cases Black has excellent counterplay.

10 ... a5–a4

In Gavrikov–Speelman (London 1985) the prospects were even after 10 ... g6! 11 c3 ♖g7 12 ♖e5 0-0 13 ♖gf3 c5 14 0-0 a4 15 ♖c2 cd 16 ♖d1 ♖e7 17 cd ♖bd5.

11 ♖b3–a2 c6–c5

(see diagram)

An alternative is the cautious 11 ... ♖e7, e. g. 12 c3 (Maršálek–Smyslov, Oberhausen 1961, went

12 ♖d2 c5 13 dc ♖bd7 14 ♖e5 ♖×c5 15 ♖gf3 ♖ce4 16 ♖b5+ ♖d7 17 ♖×d7 ♖×d7 18 ♖×d7+ ♖×d7 19 ♖e3 ♖c5, and the end-game is slightly more in Black's favour) 12 ... c5 13 ♖f4 ♖d6 14 ♖g3 ♖×g3 15 hg cd 16 ♖×d4 0-0 17 ♖gf3 ♖c7 18 0-0-0. White's prospects are slightly better, though Black's position is very solid (Suetin–Čirić, Budva 1967).

After 11 ... c5 the following variations are possible:

1) 12 dc ♖×c5 13 ♖e5 0-0 14 ♖gf3 ♖bd7 15 0-0 ♖×e5 16 ♖×e5 b6 17 ♖f3 ♖a6 18 ♖e1 ♖d4 19 c3 ♖h4 20 ♖e3 with roughly equal chances (Tukmakov–A. Zaitsev, 37th USSR Championship, 1969).

2) 12 ♖e3 ♖bd5 13 c3 ♖c7 (also sound is 13 ... ♖e7 14 ♖e5 0-0 15 ♖gf3 ♖c7) 14 ♖e5 ♖d6 15 ♖gf3 0-0 16 ♖d2 (Karpov–Kaválek, Turin 1982). Black was able to equalise with 16 ... b6.

3) 12 c3 ♖d7 (12 ... ♖a5 13 ♖e3 ♖bd5 14 ♖e5 cd 15 cd ♖d7

16 ♖×d7 ♗×d7 deserves consideration, and Black has a sound position) 13 ♖e5 cd 14 cd ♜e7 15 ♖gf3 with some pressure from White (Karpov–Petrosian, Tilburg 1982).

B

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖d7 5 ♜c4 ♖gf6 6 ♖g5 e6 7 ♗e2 ♖b6)

8 ♜c4–d3 h7–h6

Not 8 ... ♗×d4? because of 9 ♖f3 ♗d5 (9 ... ♜b4+ 10 c3 ♜×c3+ 11 ♖f1!) 10 0-0.

9 ♖g5–f3 c6–c5

In this position White can choose between two main lines: 10 dc (a) and 10 ♜e3 (b).

The continuation 10 ♜f4 is not often chosen. A game Gipslis–Marović (Tallinn 1975) continued 10 ... ♖bd5 11 ♜e5 cd 12 0-0-0 ♗a5 (after 12 ... ♜e7 13 ♖×d4 0-0 14 ♖gf3 White has some initiative) 13 ♜c4 ♖c3! 14 bc ♗a3+ 15 ♖b1 dc 16 ♜b5+ ♖d7 17 ♜×c3 ♗×c3 18 ♖e5 ♜a3 19 ♖c4 ♗b4+ 20 ♖a1 ♗c3+ 21 ♖b1 ♗b4+ 22 ♖a1 a6 23 ♜×d7+ ♜×d7 24 ♗d3 ♜b5, and the game ended in a draw.

A game Tseshkovsky–Chernin (Irkutsk 1983) was roughly level after 10 c3 ♜e7 11 ♜e3 ♖bd5 12 ♖e5 ♖×e3 (also possible is 12 ... 0-0 13 ♖gf3 ♗c7) 13 fe 0-0 14 ♖gf3 ♗c7 15 g4 ♖d7 16 0-0-0 ♖×e5

17 ♖×e5 ♜f6 18 ♖f3 cd 19 ♖×d4 b6.

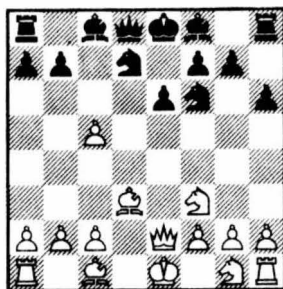
a

10 d4×c5 ...

The game now branches off in two directions: 10 ... ♖bd7 (1) or 10 ... ♜×c5 (2).

1

10 ... ♖b6–d7

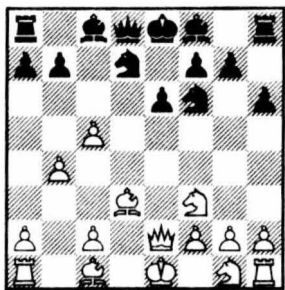


11 b2–b4 ...

The most popular and sharpest continuation. Other possibilities are: 1) 11 ♖e5 ♖×e5 (after 11 ... ♖×c5 12 ♜b5+ Black has some difficulties) 12 ♗×e5 ♗a5+ (also possible is 12 ... ♖d7 13 ♗e2 ♖×c5 14 ♜b5+ ♖d7 15 ♜d2 ♜×b5 16 ♗×b5+ ♗d7 17 ♗e2, Radulov–Onat, 1974 Olympiad, and Black was able to achieve approximate equality in the game by playing 17 ... ♗d5) 13 ♜d2 ♗×c5 14 ♖f3 (or 14 ♗e2 ♜d6 15 ♖f3 ♜d7 and ♜c6 with equal prospects) 14 ... ♗×e5 (weaker is 14 ... ♜d6 15 ♗e2 b6 16 0-0-0 ♜b7 17 ♜e3 ♗c7 18 ♜b5+ with an unpleasant

White initiative, Radulov–Sloth, 1972 Olympiad) 15 ♖×e5 ♘c5 (or 15 ... ♘d6 16 ♖c4 ♘c5 17 f4 b6 18 0-0-0 0-0 19 ♖he1 ♖d8 20 ♖e5 ♘b7 with equality, Radulov–Filip, 1972 Olympiad) 16 ♘e2 (unpromising is 16 ♘b5+ ♗e7 17 ♘e2 ♖e4 18 ♖d3 ♘d6 19 ♘e3 ♘d7 20 ♘d4 f6 21 ♘f3 ♘c6, with excellent play for Black, Parma–Smyslov, 1968 Olympiad) 16 ... ♖e4 17 ♖d3 ♘d6 18 ♘e3 ♘d7, and the chances are level (Filip).

2) 11 c6 bc 12 ♘f4 ♗b6? 13 c3 ♖d5 14 ♖h3 ♘e7 15 0-0 ♖×f4 16 ♖×f4 0-0 17 ♖e5 with a slight initiative to White (Ree–Filip, Wijk aan Zee 1970). Simpler is 12 ... ♖d5 and 13 ... ♘f6, and the prospects are level.



11 ... b7–b6

The main reply. Other possible lines are:

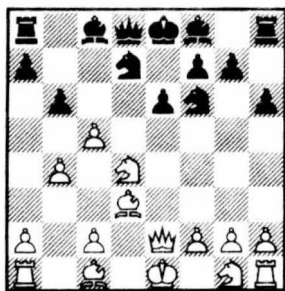
1) 11 ... a5 12 c3 ab 13 cb b6 14 ♖h3 (after 14 a4 ♖d5! 15 ♘d2 ♗f6 16 ♗d1 bc 17 b5 ♖f4 Black has excellent play) 14 ... ♖d5 15 0-0 ♖×b4 16 c6! ♖×c6 (16 ... ♖×d3 17 ♗×d3 ♖c5 18 ♗×d8+

♗×d8 19 ♖d1+ ♗e8 20 ♘e3 is also advantageous for White) 17 ♘b2 ♖b4 18 ♘b5 ♘a6 19 ♘×a6 ♖×a6 20 ♖f4, and White's prospects are clearly better (Kremenetsky–Bykhovsky, Moscow 1978).

2) 11 ... ♖d5 12 ♘d2 ♗f6 (Kefel–Hahn, correspondence game, 1979, continued 12 ... a5 13 c3 ♗f6 14 ♖c1 ab 15 cb ♗b2 16 ♖b1 ♗×a2 17 ♖h3 ♘e7 18 0-0 with white superiority) 13 ♖b1 a5 14 a3 ♖c3 15 ♘×c3 ♗×c3 16 ♗d2 ♗×a3 17 ♘b5!, and Black is in serious trouble (Hort–Böhm, Moscow 1975).

12 ♖f3–d4 ...

After 12 ♘e4 ♖×e4 13 ♗×e4 ♘a6 14 cb ab 15 ♖e2 ♖c8 Black's position is fully satisfactory (Filip).



12 ... ♖f6–d5

12 ... bc? is not possible because of 13 ♖c6 ♗c7 14 ♗×e6+! with mate next move (Perenyi–Eperjesi, Hungary 1974). Let us look at Black's other possibilities on the 12th move:

1) 12 ... ♗c7 13 ♖b5 ♗c6 14 ♘f4

♗×g2 15 0-0-0 ♖b7 16 ♗c7+ ♕e7 (16 ... ♕d8 17 ♖b5!) 17 ♖c4! ♗e4 18 ♗×e4 ♗×e4 19 ♖b5 ♖d8 20 c6 with advantage to White (Christiansen-Saidy, USA 1975).

2) 12 ... ♗×c5 13 ♖b5+ ♗cd7 14 a3 (Wergel-Koch, correspondence game 1977/80, continued 14 ♗f3 ♗d5 15 ♖c6?, and, based on Christiansen's analysis, Black was able to obtain a winning position with 15 ... ♖×b4+ 16 ♖d2 ♖×d2+ 17 ♕×d2 ♖b8 18 ♗ge2 ♗g5+ 19 ♕e1 0-0; instead of 15 ♖c6? White should have played 15 a3!; also after 14 ♖c6 ♖×b4+ 15 ♕f1 ♖b8 16 ♖f4 0-0 17 ♖×b8 ♗×b8 18 ♖d1 ♗d5! Black has excellent play) 14 ... ♖b7 15 ♗gf3 ♖e7 16 ♖b2 a6. The following are typical continuations for this position:

2a) 17 ♖d3 0-0 18 0-0 (here, interesting is 18 ♗×e6!?, e. g. 18 ... ♖×f3 19 gf fe 20 ♗×e6+ ♕h8 21 0-0-0 ♗c7 22 ♖hg1 ♗f4+ 23 ♕b1 ♖ae8 24 ♗×d7! ♗×d7 25 ♖×g7+ ♕g8 26 ♖×h6+ ♖g5 27 ♖×g5+, and White has a dangerous attack) 18 ... ♖e8 19 ♖c4 ♖f8 20 ♖fd1 ♗c7 21 ♖b3 b5 with equal chances (Kasparov-Bagirov, USSR 1978).

2b) 17 ♖c4 b5 18 ♖×e6!? fe 19 ♗×e6 ♗b6 20 ♗×g7+ ♕f7 21 0-0-0 ♖hd8 (favourable for White is 21 ... ♗d5 22 ♗h5 ♖he8 23 ♗d3 ♗g6 24 ♗×g6+ ♕×g6

25 ♖×d5, etc.) 22 ♖he1 ♗e4 23 ♖×d7 ♖×d7 24 ♗e5+ ♕g8 25 ♗×d7, and White has a won position (Sideif-Sade-Ivanov, Moscow 1979).

13 ♖c1-b2 ...

Confronts the opponent with major problems.

13 ♗c6 is answered by 13 ... ♗f6. Black also obtains the advantage after 13 ♗×e6?! (Balashov) 13 ... fe 14 ♖g6+ ♕e7, and White finds it difficult to prove that he has sufficient compensation for the sacrificed piece.

13 ... ♗d5×b4
14 ♖d3-e4 ...

Another possibility is 14 c6 ♗×d3+ 15 ♗×d3 ♗c5 16 ♗f3 ♗a4 17 0-0-0 ♗×b2 18 ♕×b2 ♗c7 19 ♗e4!? (19 ♗ge2 ♖e7 20 ♗b5 ♗e5+ 21 ♗ed4 ♖f6 22 c3 0-0 23 ♖he1 ♗c5 24 a4 e5 is favourable for Black, Tseshkovsky-Rasuvayev, USSR 1980) 19 ... a6 20 ♗gf3 ♖e7 21 ♗e5 0-0 22 f4 ♖d8 23 ♖d3 ♖d5 24 ♖hd1 b5 25 ♗df3! ♖f6 26 ♕b1 ♖a7 27 g4 ♗e7 28 h4!, and White obtained the advantage (Reinert-Kristinsson, Aarhus 1981). The continuation 19 ♗e4!? awaits further practical tests.

14 ... ♖c8-a6
15 ♗e2-f3 ...

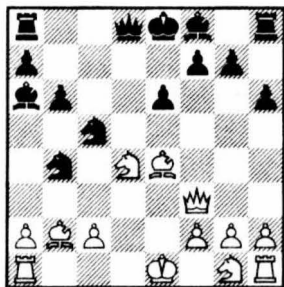
In view of the threats 16 ♗×e6 and 16 ♖×a8 White's position looks dangerous. But an interesting

tactical counterplay has been found for Black.

15 ... ♖d7×c5!?

Balashov recommended 15 ... ♖×c5 16 ♖×a8 ♖×d4 17 ♖×d4 ♖×c2+ with a strong attack by Black. But White has a better continuation, viz. 16 0-0-0!, and now there is the threat 17 ♖×e6 fe 18 ♖g6+. After 16 ... ♗g5+ 17 ♖b1 ♖c8 18 ♖h3 ♗e7 19 a3 Black's position is most unpleasant.

After 15 ... ♖×c5! the following variations are possible:



1) 16 ♖c6! ♖×e4 (weaker is 16 ... ♗d6 because of 17 ♖e5!) 17 ♖×d8 (17 ♗×e4 ♗d5! is favourable for Black) 17 ... ♖×c2+ 18 ♖d1 ♖×d8+ 19 ♖×c2 ♖c8+ 20 ♖d1 ♖d8+, and the game is drawish (Balashov).

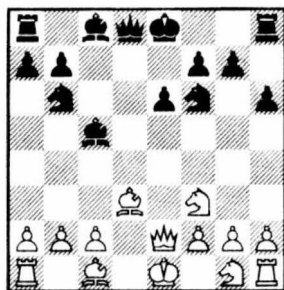
2) 16 ♖×a8 ♖×c2+! 17 ♖×c2 ♖d3+ 18 ♖d2? (correct is 18 ♗×d3! ♗×d3 19 ♖c6+ ♖e7 20 ♖d1 ♗×c2 21 ♖d7+ ♖e8 22 ♖d6+ with a probable draw; if 20 ♖e3 instead of 20 ♖d1, then 20 ... ♗d6!, and the chances are equal) 18 ... ♖×b2+! (but not

18 ... ♖e5+ 19 ♖d4 ♖×f3+ 20 ♖×f3 e5 21 ♖c6+ ♖e7 22 ♖e1, and White seizes the initiative) 19 ♖c1 ♖d3+ 20 ♖b1 ♖c5 21 ♖h3 0-0 22 ♖e4 ♖e5 23 ♗c3 (more resistance is offered by 23 ♖d1 ♖×f3 24 ♖×d8 ♖×d8 25 ♖×f3 g5, although this end-game is also somewhat better for Black) 23 ... ♗d6 24 f4 ♖c4 25 ♖d3 ♖a3+ 26 ♖×a3 ♖×d3+ 27 ♖c2 ♖b4 28 ♗b3 ♖c8 29 ♖d1 ♖c3 30 ♖f2 ♖×b3+ 31 ab ♖×c2+ 32 ♖×c2 ♗c5+, and White resigned (van der Wiel-Balashov, 1980 Olympiad).

2

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖d7 5 ♖c4 ♖gf6 6 ♖g5 e6 7 ♗e2 ♖b6 8 ♖d3 h6 9 ♖f3 c5 10 dc)

10 ... ♖f8×c5



11 ♖f3-e5 ...

Another continuation used quite frequently is 11 ♖d2, e. g. 11 ... ♗c7 (Fedorov-Voltshok, USSR 1981, continued 11 ... ♖bd7 12 0-0-0 0-0? 13 ♖h3 ♗c7 14 g4!

♖×g4 15 ♜hg1 ♖df6 16 ♜c3 ♜d6 17 ♖d4 with good attacking prospects for White on the K-side) 12 0-0-0 (but not 12 ♖e5? ♜×f2+! 13 ♜×f2 ♝×e5!, and Black keeps a sound extra pawn) 12 ... ♖bd7 13 ♖h3 g5!? (13 ... a6 14 ♜b1 b5 15 ♜f4 ♝b6 16 ♖e5 ♜b7, Ivkov-Filip, 1964 Olympiad, leads to equal play) 14 ♖hg1 (in Black's favour is 14 ♜c3? g4 15 ♖e5 gh 16 ♖×d7 ♜×d7 17 ♝f3 hg 18 ♜hg1 0-0-0!; 14 ♖e1!? however, is worth considering) 14 ... ♜g8 15 c4 b6 16 ♜c3 ♜b7, and Black's prospects are slightly better (Boleslavsky).

11 ... ♖b6-d7

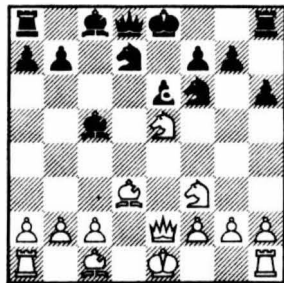
11 ... 0-0 12 ♖gf3 ♖bd5 13 a3 b6 leads to sharp play with attacking prospects for White (worth considering is 13 ... a5!? 14 0-0 b6 15 c4 ♖e7 16 b3 ♜b7 17 ♜b2 ♖f5 18 ♝c2! ♖d4 19 ♖×d4 ♜×d4 20 ♜ad1 ♜×b2! 21 ♝×b2 ♝e7, and Black has a defensible position, Zuidema-Bouwmeester, Holland 1965) 14 g4! ♜b7 15 ♜g1 ♖d7 16 g5!, and White has a dangerous attack on the K-side (Darga-Filip, 1964 Olympiad).

12 ♖g1-f3

(see diagram)

12 ... ♖d7×e5

In this complex position, which is of importance in the appraisal of the variation, the following continuations are also possible:



1) 12 ... ♝c7 13 0-0 (not good is 13 ♜d2? ♖×e5 14 ♖×e5 ♜×f2+!; 13 ♜f4!? ♜d6 14 0-0-0! ♖d5 leads to sharp play — after 14 ... ♖h5?! 15 g3 0-0 16 ♜b1 ♖c5 17 ♖d4 White's prospects are better, also favourable for White is 15 ... g5 16 ♜he1, or 15 ... ♖×f4 16 gf ♜×e5 17 fe ♖c5 18 ♜hg1, Popović-Spiridonov, 1984 — 15 ♜g3 — 15 g3 ♖c3! — 15 ... ♖c3 16 bc ♝×c3 17 ♖c4 ♝a1+ with a draw, Chandler-Speelman, London 1986) 13 ... 0-0, and now:

1a) 14 ♜e1 ♖d6 15 ♜f4 b6 16 ♖×d7 ♜×d7 17 ♜×d6 ♝×d6 18 ♖e5 ♜fd8 with a solid black defence.
1b) 14 ♜f4 ♜d6 15 ♖×d7 (after 15 ♜fe1 ♖c5 16 ♜ad1 b6 17 ♜b5 ♖d5 18 ♜g3 ♜b7 19 c4 ♖f6 20 ♜×d6 ♝×d6 21 ♖g6 ♝d3 the chances are equal, Klován-Vyshmanin, Minsk 1984) 15 ... ♜×d7 16 ♜×d6 ♝×d6 17 ♖e5 ♜fd8 18 ♜ad1 ♝b6 (Jansa-Holmov, Budapest 1976). White was able to consolidate his marginal advantage with 19 c4.

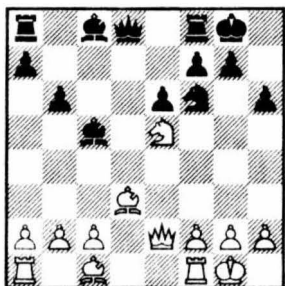
1c) 14 ♖d2 ♖d6 15 ♗×d7 ♖×d7
 16 ♖ae1 ♖fd8 17 ♗e5 ♖b5!
 18 ♖×b5 ♖×e5 19 ♗×e5 ♗×e5
 20 ♖×e5 ♖×d2 21 ♖d3 ♗c8, and
 Black has no difficulties (Sokolov-
 Karpov, match 1987).

2) 12 ... 0-0 13 ♖d2 ♗×e5
 14 ♗×e5 ♖d4 15 0-0-0 ♗d5!
 (better than 15 ... ♗b6 16 c3!
 ♖c5 17 g4!, after which White has
 fair prospects of an attack on the
 K-side) 16 f4 ♗×a2 17 c3 ♖c5
 18 g4 ♗d5 19 g5 ♖a3!, and Black
 has sufficient counterplay to equalise
 (Filip).

13 ♗f3×e5 0-0

14 ♖c1-d2 ...

Another popular continuation is
 14 0-0 b6 (a game Matulović-Pfle-
 ger, 1968 Olympiad, continued
 14 ... ♖d6, and here White was able
 to consolidate his initiative by play-
 ing 15 f4 followed by ♖d2 and
 ♖ae1) with the following variations:



1) 15 ♖d1 ♗e7 (15 ... ♗c7
 16 ♗g4!) 16 b4 (after 16 ♖f4 ♖b7
 17 ♖g3 ♖fd8, Black has no prob-
 lems, Matanović-Pfleger, 1964
 Olympiad) 16 ... ♖d6 17 ♖b2

♖b7 18 a3 ♖fd8 19 c4 a5 with
 good counterplay for Black (Filip).

2) 15 ♖f4 ♖b7 16 ♖ad1 ♗e7
 17 c3 ♖fd8 18 ♖d2 ♖d6 (also
 good is 18 ... a6 19 ♖fd1 b5 with
 equal play, Prandstetter-Speelman,
 Taxco 1985) 19 ♖fd1 ♖ac8
 20 ♖a6 ♖×a6 21 ♗×a6 ♗e4
 22 ♖d4 ♗f6! 23 ♗d3 ♖×f4
 24 ♗×f4 e5! with equal prospects
 (Mecking-Hort, Las Palmas 1975).

3) 15 ♖×h6! g h 16 ♗f3 ♗d5 (af-
 ter 16 ... ♖b8 the move 17 ♗c6 is
 strong, 16 ... ♖d7 is answered by
 17 ♖d1!) 17 c4 ♗×g5 18 ♖ae1
 ♖b4 19 ♖e4 f5 20 ♖e2 ♗f4
 21 ♗×a8 ♗×e2 22 ♖×e2 ♗g7
 23 ♗f3 ♗×b2 24 ♖d3 ♖d8
 25 ♗c6 ♗g7, and the game is ap-
 proximately equal.

4) 15 ♗f3 ♗c7! (weaker is 15 ...
 ♖b8 16 ♖f4 ♖b7 17 ♗h3!, after
 which White has a dangerous initia-
 tive) 16 ♖e1 ♖d6 17 ♗g3 ♗d7
 18 ♖f4 ♖b7 19 ♖e3 ♗×e5
 with equal play (Jansa-A. Zaitsev,
 1965).

5) 15 b4?! ♖d6! (15 ... ♖×b4
 16 ♗f3 ♖d7 17 ♖×h6 g h
 18 ♗×d7 ♗×d7 19 ♗e4 is danger-
 ous for Black) 16 ♖b2 ♖b7 17 a3
 ♗e7 18 ♖fe1 a5 19 ♗c4 ♖c7
 20 b5 a4! with level play for Black
 (de Firmian-Dlugy, Tunis 1985).

14 ... ♗d8-d5!

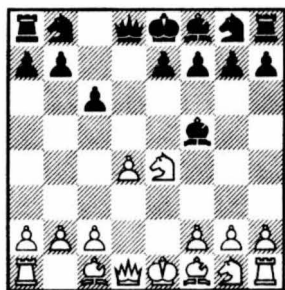
The game now branches off into
 two variations depending on the side
 on which White castles: 15 0-0 (2a)
 and 15 0-0-0 (2b).

Chapter 2

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4
♟f5

4 ... ♟c8-f5

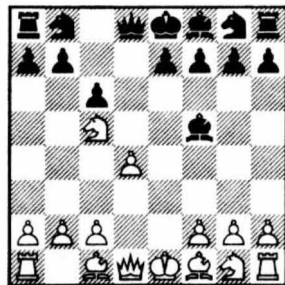
This system which has retained its popularity over many years bears Capablanca's name. Black's main strategic idea is clear and simple: he solves the problem of his light-squared bishop, developing it to an active post without further ado. But he finds it difficult to overcome his opening problems, as modern practice shows, since in the long term White obtains a small but lasting space advantage. It is, in general, a quiet and rather positional struggle.



5 ♖e4-g3 ...

White's main continuation. The following rarely played moves are also possible:

1) 5 ♖c5! This manoeuvre recommended by Bronstein deserves attention. White, eager to avoid simplification and symmetry, wishes to obtain an unusual position. The following variations may arise:



1a) 5 ... b6 6 ♖b3 (double-edged play emerges from 6 ♖a6! e6 7 ♟f3 ♖e7 8 ♖×b8 ♟×b8 9 ♟f4 ♟b7 10 c3 ♖d5 11 g4 ♖×f4 12 ♟×f4 ♟g6 13 ♟g3 ♟e7 14 h4 h5, Timman-Pomar, Orense 1976) 6 ... e6 (in Bronstein-Lutikov, USSR 1978, White had a clear advantage in development after 6 ... ♖f6 7 ♖f3 ♖bd7 8 g3 a5! 9 ♟g2 e6 10 0-0 a4 11 ♖bd2; more cautious is 8 ... e6) 7 ♖f3 ♖d7 (or 7 ... ♟d6 8 g3 ♖e7 9 ♟g2 h6 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♟e2 with a slight White advantage, Bronstein-Petrosian, USSR 1966) 8 g3 ♖gf6 9 ♟g2 ♟c8 10 0-0 ♟d6 11 ♟e2 ♟c7, and the game is approximately equal (Schmit-Birbrager, USSR 1969).

1b) 5 ... ♟c8 6 ♖f3 ♖f6 (6 ... e6 7 ♖e5! b6 8 ♖cd3 ♖f6 9 g4! and White is able to apply pressure) 7 ♟d3 ♟g4! 8 h3 ♟h5 9 ♟f4 ♖bd7 10 ♖b3 (worth noting is 10 ♖×d7 ♟×d7 11 c3 followed by 12 g4 and ♖e5) 10 ... e6 11 c3 ♟e7 12 ♟e2 ♖d5 13 ♟h2 ♟d8 14 c4 ♖b4 15 ♟b1 b5! 16 cb (after 16 a3 bc 17 ♟×c4 ♟×f3 18 gf

♖d5 19 ♜×c6 0-0 Black has an excellent position) 16 ... cb 17 ♜×b5 ♙×f3 18 gf 0-0 with good compensation for the pawn (Ermenkov-Bagirov, Titovo-Užice 1978).

1c) 5 ... ♜b6 6 g4! ♙g6 7 f4 e6 8 ♜e2 ♙e7 9 h4 h5 10 f5! ef 11 g5 ♖d7 12 ♖b3 ♜c7 13 ♜h3 0-0-0 14 ♙f4 ♙d6 15 ♜d2! ♖f8 16 0-0-0 ♖e6 17 ♙×d6 ♙×d6 18 ♙c4 ♖e7 19 ♖f4 ♖×f4 20 ♜×f4 ♙dd8 21 ♜×c7+ ♙×c7 22 c3 with lasting white pressure in the end-game, which is good compensation for the sacrificed pawn (Bronstein-Belyavsky, 43rd USSR Championship, 1976).

1d) 5 ... e5! 6 ♖×b7 ♜e7 7 ♖a5 ed+ 8 ♙e2 ♜b4+ 9 ♙d2! ♜×b2 10 ♙d3 ♙×d3 11 cd ♙b4 12 ♖f3 ♙×d2+ 13 ♖×d2 (Klovan-Machulsky, USSR 1978). The move 13 ... ♜b4! enabled Black to obtain good play. 9 ♜d2! ♙×c2 10 ♜×b4 ♙×b4+ 11 ♙d2 seems to be better than 9 ♙d2, and White has a substantial lead in development for his sacrificed pawn.

1e) 5 ... ♜c7 6 ♙d3 ♙×d3 7 ♖×d3 ♖f6 8 ♖f3 e6 9 0-0 ♖bd7 10 c4 ♙e7 11 ♙f4 ♜a5 12 b4 ♜d8 13 ♖c5, and White has a marginal advantage (Kurtenkov-Rasmussen, Plovdiv 1986).

2) 5 ♜f3 e6 (also possible is either 5 ... ♙g6, 5 ... ♜d5, or 5 ... ♙×e4 6 ♜×e4 ♖f6, and Black has no major difficulties) 6 ♙e3 (or 6 c3 ♖d7 7 ♙f4 ♖df6, etc.) 6 ...

♜a5+ 7 c3 (not particularly good is 7 ♙d2 ♜d5 8 ♙d3 ♜×d4 9 0-0-0 ♖d7, and White has no compensation for his pawn) 7 ... ♙a3! 8 b4 ♜d5 9 ♙d3 ♙b2 10 ♙b1 ♙×e4 11 ♙×e4 ♙×c3+ 12 ♙f1 ♜×a2 13 ♖e2 with a sharp position in which Black is two pawns up but White has a lead in development and prospects for initiative (Trifunović).

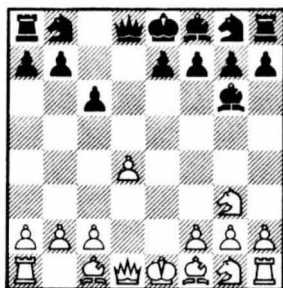
3) 5 ♙d3 ♜×d4 (the logical continuation; after 5 ... e6 6 ♖f3 ♖d7 7 0-0 ♙×e4 8 ♙×e4 ♖gf6 9 ♙d3 ♙d6 10 ♜e2 White has a slight advantage) 6 ♖f3 ♜d8 (after 6 ... ♜d5 7 ♜e2 ♖f6 8 c4 ♜d8 9 0-0 White's position is quite active) 7 ♜e2 ♖f6 (Black needs to play very precisely; White has the initiative if 7 ... ♙×e4 8 ♙×e4 ♖f6 9 0-0! ♖×e4 10 ♜×e4 e6 11 ♙g5 ♙c7 12 ♙ad1 ♜c7 13 ♙fe1 0-0 14 ♙f4 ♜a5 15 ♙e5, Trifunović, or 7 ... e6 8 ♙f4 ♖d7 9 0-0-0 ♖gf6, Peritz-Porath, Israel 1961, and now 10 ♖×f6+ ♜×f6 11 ♙g5 ♜g6 12 ♙×f5 ♜×f5 13 ♜d2) 8 ♙d2 (with 8 ♖×f6+ gf 9 ♙×f5 ♜a5+ 10 ♙d2 ♜×f5 11 0-0-0 ♖d7 12 ♙e3 ♜a5 Black keeps his extra pawn, Fajarowicz-Blümich, 1930) 8 ... ♙×e4 9 ♙×e4 ♖×e4 10 ♜×e4 e6 11 0-0-0 with some compensation for the sacrificed pawn (Trifunović).

5 ... ♙f5-g6

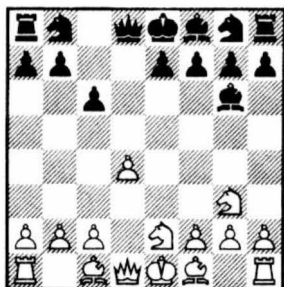
In this position White can choose between various continuations of

which 6 h4 (I) is the best. In addition we shall examine 6 ♖f3 (II) and 6 ♖c4 (III) separately.

Let us first look at some other possible lines for White.



1) 6 ♖1e2. This reply often transposes into the variation 6 h4 h6 7 ♖1e2, etc. Here we deal with lines which are significant in their own right:



1a) 6 ... ♖f6 7 ♖f4 e5 (Suetin-Bronstein, Moscow 1964, continued 7 ... ♖d5 8 ♖×g6 hg 9 ♖e2 ♖f6 10 ♖d3 e6 11 ♖d2 ♖bd7 12 0-0-0, and White's position improved slightly) 8 ♖×g6 hg 9 de ♖a5+! (weaker is 9 ... ♖×d1+ 10 ♖×d1 ♖g4 11 ♖e4 ♖×e5 12 ♖f4 ♖bd7 13 c3 f6

14 ♖c2 0-0-0 15 ♖e1 ♖e8 16 ♖e2, and the end-game is in White's favour, Stein-Holmov, 31st USSR Championship, 1963) 10 ♖d2 ♖×e5+ 11 ♖e2 ♖×e2+ 12 ♖×e2 ♖bd7 13 0-0 0-0-0 14 ♖ad1 ♖b6 15 ♖c1 ♖d6, and Black equalises the game (Tal-Botvinnik, Moscow 1964).

1b) 6 ... e6 7 h4 (Dobosz-Onat, Primorsko 1979, continued 7 ♖f4 ♖d6 8 c3 ♖f6 9 h4 ♖d5 10 ♖×d5 ♖×g3? 11 h5 with advantage to White) 7 ... ♖f6 (7 ... h6 transposes into the main variation) 8 h5 ♖f5 9 ♖×f5 ♖a5+ 10 c3 ♖×f5 11 ♖g3 ♖a5 12 ♖f4 with a small advantage to White (Tal-Bagirov, USSR 1964).

1c) 6 ... e5? 7 de ♖×d1+ 8 ♖×d1 ♖c5 9 ♖f4! ♖×f2 10 ♖×g6 hg 11 ♖e4 ♖d4 12 ♖d6+ ♖e7 13 ♖c4 f6 14 ♖f7 (Prins-Szabó, Venice 1949).

1d) 6 ... ♖d7 7 h4 h6 8 ♖f4 ♖h7 9 ♖c4 e5 10 ♖d3! ed 11 0-0, Tal.

In both cases White has a dangerous initiative.

2) 6 ♖h3 e6 (6 ... ♖f6 7 ♖f4 e5 8 ♖×g6 hg 9 de ♖a5+ transposes into the variation 1a) 7 ♖f4 ♖d6 (after 7 ... ♖h4 8 ♖e2 ♖d7 9 ♖e3 ♖d6 10 ♖d2 ♖e7 11 ♖×g6 hg 12 ♖e4 ♖c7 13 c4 White has good prospects for initiative, Novopashin-Furman, 31st USSR Championship, 1963) 8 c3 ♖f6 9 h4 ♖c7 10 h5 ♖×f4 11 ♖×f4 ♖×f4 12 hg fg 13 ♖d2 ♖×d2+ 14 ♖×d2 ♖bd7

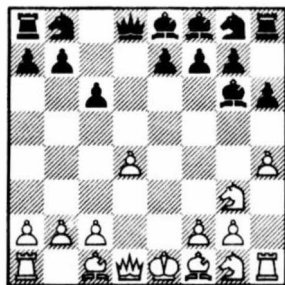
15 ♖e1 ♕f7 with roughly equal play (Boleslavsky–Petrosian, Zurich 1953).

3) 6 f4 e6 (interesting is 6 ... h5! 7 ♖f3 h4 8 ♖e2 ♖d7 9 ♖e5 ♖xe5 10 fe e6 11 ♖f4 ♖f5, and Black has good counterplay) 7 h4 (Marshall–Capablanca, New York 1927, continued 7 ♖f3 ♖d6 8 ♖d3 ♖e7! 9 0-0 ♖d7 10 ♕h1 ♖c7 11 ♖e5 ♖d8 12 ♖e2 ♖xd3 13 ♖xd3 0-0 14 ♖d2 c5 15 ♖e4 ♖f5, and Black controls important central squares and has comfortable play) 7 ... h5 8 ♖f3 ♖d7 9 ♖c4 (in Black's favour is 9 ♖e5? ♖xe5 10 fe ♖e7, etc.) 9 ... ♖e7 10 0-0 ♖c7 (not good is 10 ... ♖xh4? 11 f5! ef 12 ♖xh4 ♖xh4 13 ♖xf5 ♖xf5 14 ♖xf5 ♖gf6 15 ♖e2+ ♕f8 16 ♖f4 ♖g3 17 ♖g3 ♖g4 18 ♖f4 ♖e8 19 ♖f2 with a dangerous white initiative) 11 ♖e2 0-0-0 12 c3. The game is approximately equal.

I

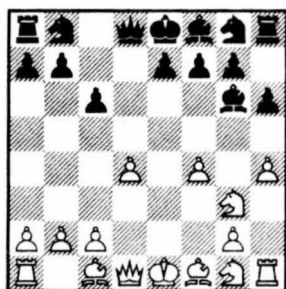
6 h2–h4 h7–h6

The most frequently played reply. The threat h4–h5 can also be parried with 6 ... h5. However, this move has been played very rarely so far. A game Böttger–Wolfensberger (FRG 1967) continued 7 ♖h3! e5 8 de ♖a5+ 9 c3 ♖d7. By playing 10 e6 ♖e5+ 11 ♖e2 ♖xe6 12 ♖f4 White was able to obtain a dangerous initiative.



After 6 ... h6 White can choose between the main continuations 7 ♖f3 (A) and 7 ♖h3 (B).

The move 7 f4! is also possible.



Events may now take the following course: 7 ... e6 8 ♖f3, and now:

1) 8 ... ♖d7 9 h5 ♖h7 10 ♖d3 ♖xd3 11 ♖xd3 ♖c7 12 ♖d2 0-0-0 (in Kaválek–Saidy, Las Palmas 1973, White took over the initiative after 12 ... ♖gf6 13 0-0-0 c5 14 ♖e2 0-0-0 — 14 ... ♖d6 15 ♖f5! — 15 ♖e5 ♖b6 16 dc ♖xc5 17 ♕b1 ♖d4 18 ♖a5) 13 ♖e2 c5! with approximate equality (Hort–Garcia–Palermo, Reggio Emilia 1984/85). After 13 ♖e2, 13 ... ♖gf6 is weaker owing to

14 0-0 ♖d6? 15 ♗e5 ♜hf8 16 c4 c5 17 ♖e3 ♗b6 18 dcl ♖×c5 19 b3 with advantage to White (Sax-Rodriguez, Biel 1985).

2) 8 ... ♖d6 9 ♗e5! (not bad either is 9 h5 ♖h7 10 ♖d3 ♖×d3 11 ♗×d3 ♗f6 12 ♗e2 ♗c7 13 ♗e5 c5 14 dc ♗×c5 15 ♗f5! 0-0 16 ♖e3 ♗c7 17 ♗×d6 ♗×d6 18 g4 ♗b4+ 19 c3 ♗e4 20 0-0-0 with a marginal initiative for White, Marjanović-Groszpeter, Zenica 1986) 9 ... ♖×e5 10 fe ♗e7 11 h5 ♖h7 12 c3 c5? 13 ♖c4 cd 14 0-0!, and White has the initiative (Arnason-Adianto, 1986 Olympiad).

A

7 ♗g1-f3 ♗b8-d7

This reply is practically forced by the strong positional threat 8 ♗e5. White has now the option of two main continuations: 8 ♖d3 (a) with immediate exchange of the light-squared bishop and 8 h5 ♖h7 9 ♖d3 (b) which represents the modern version of this plan.

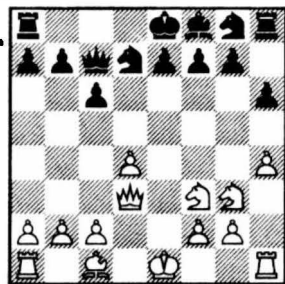
a

8 ♖f1-d3 ...

An obsolete variation in this system which is hardly played in practice. Nowadays the continuation 8 h5 is by far the most popular. Practice shows that after the text move Black does not encounter any special difficulties.

8 ... ♖g6×d3

9 ♗d1×d3 ♗d8-c7



Often 9 ... e6 is played, which after 10 ♖d2 usually means transposition. In addition to 10 ♖d2 White can also play 10 ♖f4 with a number of independent variations:

10 ... ♗g6 (here, Black may still transpose into the main variation with 10 ... ♗a5+ 11 ♖d2 ♗c7, etc.) 11 0-0-0 ♗d5 (also interesting is 11 ... ♖e7 12 ♜he1 a5 13 c4 b5!?) 12 ♖d2 b5! (12 ... ♗c7 13 c4 ♗f6 14 ♖b1 White wins a tempo as compared with the main variations; Suetin-Aronin, Saratov 1948, continued 14 ... ♖e7 15 ♖c3 0-0-0 16 ♗e2 ♜he8, and here White was able to exert a lasting pressure on the opponent's position after 17 ♗e5!) 13 ♖b1 ♖d6 (Suetin-Kasparian, 20th USSR Championship, 1952, went on 13 ... ♖e7 14 ♗h5 ♖f6 15 g4 g6 16 ♗×f6+ ♗×f6 17 g5 hg 18 ♖×g5, and in view of his pressure on the dark squares White has a positional advantage) 14 ♗e4 ♗7f6 15 ♜hg1 ♜b8 16 g4 b4 17 ♗×d6+ ♗×d6 18 g5 ♗d7 19 ♜de1, after which White has a

lasting initiative (Matulović–Wade, Opatija 1953).

A long time ago a game Charousek–von Popiel (Cologne, 1898) went 9 ... e6 10 ♖f4 ♗gf6 11 0-0-0 ♘a5 12 ♙b1 0-0-0 13 ♗f1 ♚e7 14 ♗1d2 ♗c5 15 ♘e2 ♗d5 16 dcl ♗xf4 17 ♘e4 ♗d5 18 ♗e5!, and White obtained a considerable advantage.

Worth mentioning are Black's recent attempts to do without the move ♘d8–c7 after 9 ... e6 10 ♖d2. A game Hort–Larsen (Buenos Aires 1980) went on 10 ... ♗gf6 11 0-0-0 ♚e7 12 ♙b1 c5! 13 ♜he1 0-0! 14 ♗e4 ♜c8 15 dc ♗xc5 16 ♗xf6+ ♚xf6 17 ♘xd8 ♜fxd8 18 ♚e3 ♜xd1+ 19 ♜xd1 a6 20 c3 with a slight advantage to White.

10 ♖c1–d2 e7–e6

11 0-0-0 ...

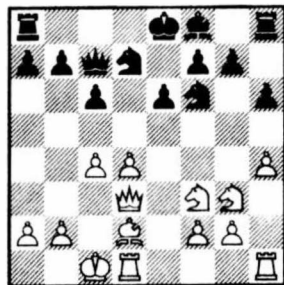
It is also possible to play immediately 11 c4 ♗gf6 12 ♚c3, after which the continuations 12 ... c5 or 12 ... ♖d6 are reasonable for Black. In Fischer–Donner (1962 Olympiad) Black, however, played 12 ... a5!, and after 13 0-0! ♖d6 14 ♗e4 ♗xe4 15 ♘xe4 0-0 16 d5! ♜e8 17 dc bc 18 ♜ad1 White obtained a clear positional advantage.

11 ... ♗g8–f6

In Ljubojević–Miles (1986 Olympiad) Black obtained good play after 11 ... 0-0-0 12 ♙b1 ♗gf6 13 ♖c1! c5 14 ♘e2 (it has been known for some time that in such

positions White normally plays 14 c4; if White omits this move, Black significantly improves his position structurally with the following move) 14 ... c4! 15 ♗e5 ♗b6 16 c3 ♖d6.

12 c2–c4



The most frequently used plan. White wants quickly to gain space advantage in the centre and on the Q-side.

Other possible lines are:

- 1) 12 ♗e4 0-0-0 13 g3 ♗c5! (in Matulović–Hort, Sombor 1968, White obtained a small but lasting advantage after 13 ... ♗xc4 14 ♘xe4 ♚e7 15 ♙b1 ♜he8 16 ♜he1 ♘b6 17 ♘e2 ♘b5 18 c4 ♘f5+ 19 ♙a1 ♖d6 20 ♖c3) 14 ♗xc5 ♖xc5 15 ♙b1 ♖d6 16 c4 c5 17 ♖c3 a6 followed by c5xd4 with equal play (Boleslavsky).
- 2) 12 ♘e2 ♖d6 (the most precise continuation, Black does not want to concede e5 to his opponent; with 12 ... 0-0-0 13 ♗c5 ♗xe5 14 de ♗d7, Rossolimo–Eliskases, Mar del Plata 1949, White is able to maintain his pressure by playing 15 ♖c3)

40 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4

13 ♖e4 ♜f4 14 g3 ♜×d2+
15 ♖e×d2 with equality (Averbakh–
Holmov, 16th USSR Championship,
1948).

3) 12 ♖e5? ♖×e5 13 de ♜×e5
14 ♜he1 ♜c7 15 ♖f5 ♖d5 16 c4
0-0-0 17 cd ♜×d5 18 ♖d4 ♜c5,
and Black has a lasting advantage.

12 ... 0-0-0

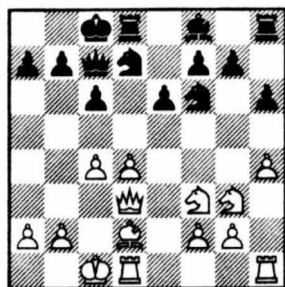
Another possibility is 12 ... ♜d6.
Black's aim is a quick exchange of
the dark-squared bishops. Klovan–
Khussenov (USSR 1976) continued
13 ♖e4 ♜f4 14 ♜b1 ♜×d2
15 ♜×d2 ♖×e4 16 ♜×e4 ♖f6
17 ♜e3 ♖g4 18 ♜e4 ♖f6 19 ♜e2
♜f4 20 ♜a1 ♜d8 21 ♜e1 0-0
22 g3 ♜d6 23 ♜ed1 ♜b4 24 a3
♜a4 25 ♖e5! ♖d7 26 ♜a2 ♖×e5
27 de ♜×d2 28 ♜×d2 c5 29 ♜d6.
Notwithstanding the simplifications
White exerts persistent pressure owing
to his secure control of the d-file.

Another continuation worth mention-
ing is the rather extraordinary
12 ... b5?! 13 cb cb+ 14 ♜b1
♜b7 15 ♜he1 ♜e7 16 ♜c1 a6
17 ♖e5, after which there are consid-
erable weaknesses in the black
camp (Kasparian–Smyslov, 15th
USSR Championship, 1947). The text
move 12 ... 0-0-0 leads to the criti-
cal point of the variation.

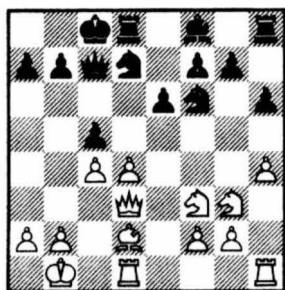
(see diagram)

Now the following lines are possi-
ble:

1) 13 ♜b1 c5 (the most energetic
continuation; with 13 ... ♜d6



14 ♖e4 ♖×e4 15 ♜×e4 ♖f6
16 ♜e2 c5 17 ♜c3 cd 18 ♖×d4
a6 19 ♖f3! White maintains his
pressure due to his control of e5),
and now:



1a) 14 ♜c3 cdl (Fine–Hanauer,
USA 1940, continued 14 ... ♜d6
15 ♖e4 ♖×e4 16 ♜×e4 ♖f6
17 ♜e2 a6 18 ♖e5 ♜×e5 19 de
♖d7 20 ♜d6! ♖b8 21 ♜hd1 ♖c6
22 h5 ♜g8 23 ♜e3, and Black is al-
ready in a very difficult position; no
better either is 17 ... cd 18 ♜×d4
♜c5 19 ♜×c5 ♜×c5 20 ♖e5
♜e7 21 c5!).

15 ♖×d4 (or 15 ♜×d4 ♜c5
16 ♖e4 ♜×d4 17 ♜×d4 ♜b8 with
equal play) 15 ... a6 (after 15 ...
♖c5 16 ♜e2 ♖a4 17 ♖b5

♖×c3+ 18 ♖×c3 ♜×d1+ 19 ♜×d1 a6 20 h5 White has a small advantage, Padevsky–Barcza, Kecskemét 1966) 16 ♖f3 (if 16 ♖b3 ♖c5 17 ♗f3 ♕e7 18 ♕a5 ♜×d1+ 19 ♜×d1 ♗e5 20 ♕c3 ♗c7, Spassky–Portisch, Budapest 1961, or after 16 ♗e2 ♕d6 17 ♖e4 ♖×e4 18 ♗×e4 ♖c5 19 ♗c2 ♕e5 20 ♜he1 ♕f6 21 g3 ♜d7, Unzicker–Porath, 1958 Olympiad, Black equalises) 16 ... ♕c5 17 ♗c2 ♕d6 (equal play is achieved with 17 ... ♖g4 18 ♖e4 ♖df6 19 ♖×f6 gf 20 ♖d4 ♜hg8 21 b4 ♗e5, Sokolov–Sušić, Yugoslavia 1965) 18 ♖e4 ♕e7! (a fine move; after 18 ... ♖×e4 19 ♗×e4 ♖f6 20 ♗e2 ♗c6 21 ♜de1 ♕c7 22 ♖d4 White retains some initiative) 19 ♖×f6 ♕×f6 20 ♕×f6. A game Spassky–Petrosian, 1966, took this course. It continued 20 ... ♖×f6 21 ♖e5 with a small advantage for White. However, after 20 ... gfl Black was able to get equal play.

1b) 14 ♗e2 ♕d6 (the clearest route to equality; after 14 ... cd 15 ♖×d4 a6 16 ♖b3! ♕d6 17 c5! ♕×g3 18 ♕a5! ♗e5 19 ♗c2 ♜de8 20 c6 ♖b8! 21 cb+ ♗×b7 22 fg White retains a marginal advantage, Parma–Vukić, Yugoslavia 1972; also with 14 ... a6 15 ♖e5 ♖×e5 16 de ♖d7 17 f4 ♖b8 18 ♕c3 ♜×d1+ 19 ♜×d1 ♕e7 20 h5! White's pressure is rather uncomfortable, Parma–Barcza, Kapfenberg 1970) 15 ♖e4 ♖×e4

16 ♗×e4 ♖f6 17 ♗e2 a6 (Matulović–Kolarov, 1966 Olympiad, went 17 ... cd 18 ♖×d4 a6 19 ♕c3 — 19 ♖b3!7 — 19 ... ♕c5 20 ♖b3 ♜×d1+ 21 ♜×d1 ♜d8 22 ♜×d8+ with a relatively favourable end-game for White) 18 ♕c3 ♜he8 19 ♜he1 cd 20 ♖×d4 ♕c5, and the game is level (Parma–Ivkov, Yugoslavia 1964). 2) 13 ♕c3 ♕d6 14 ♖e4 ♕f4+ 15 ♗b1 ♖e5 16 ♖×e5 ♕×e5 17 ♗e3 ♖×e4 18 de (after 18 ♗×e47! ♕f6 19 ♜d2 ♜d7 20 ♜hd1 ♜hd8 21 g3 ♗b6 Black exerts strong pressure on the d4-square, promising him the better chances, Hennings–Hort, Harrachov 1967) 18 ... ♜×d1+ 19 ♜×d1 ♜d8 with equal prospects (Szabó–Barcza, Leningrad 1967).

3) 13 ♖e4 ♖g4!7 14 ♗e2 ♖df6 15 ♖×f6 gf 16 h5 ♜g8 17 ♗b1 ♕e7 18 ♕c1 f5 with equal chances (Vukčević–Matanović, Yugoslavia 1958).

4) 13 ♗e2 ♕d6 14 ♖e4 ♕f4, and Black has no difficulties (Trifunović).

It should be mentioned at this point that White has still the rare continuation 13 ♜he1 at his disposal.

b

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♕f5 5 ♖g3 ♕g6 6 h4 h6 7 ♖f3 ♖d7)

8 h4–h5 ♕g6–h7

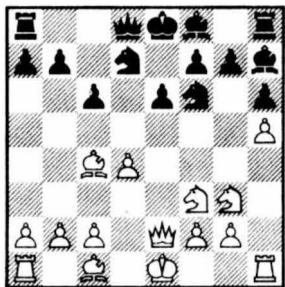
A modern continuation. It holds,

without a doubt, the most important place in the latest theory and practice of the Caro-Kann Defence. This system has become one of the most argued over lines in openings theory. White immediately freezes the opponent's pawn position on the K-side and intends, in due course, to make a favourable transition into the endgame. In view of the large volume of practical material gathered in recent years, an exhaustive analysis of this system is very time-consuming and complex. But a number of interesting strategic ideas and sophisticated tactical solutions have been found recently.

9 ♖f1-d3 ...

The most common continuation which is connected with the immediate exchange of the light-squared bishops.

Black need not worry about 9 ♖c4 e6 10 ♗e2 ♖gf6.



Now the following variations may arise:

1) 11 ♖b3 ♖d6 12 ♖d2 ♗c7 13 ♖de4 ♖f4 14 ♖×f4 (Keller-Barcza, Zurich 1959, continued

14 ♗f3? ♖×c1 15 ♖×c1 0-0-0 16 c3 ♖×e4 17 ♖×e4 e5!, and the initiative passed to Black) 14 ... ♗×f4 15 ♗d2 with equal play (Trifunović).

2) 11 ♖e5 ♖×e5 12 de ♖d7 13 ♖f4 ♖b6 14 ♖d1 ♗c7 15 ♖b3 ♖d5 16 ♖c1 0-0-0 17 0-0 ♖e7, and the prospects are equal (Mnatsakanian-A. Polyak, Leningrad 1957).

3) 11 0-0 ♖e7 12 ♖e1 ♖d5? (better is 12 ... ♖d6 with equal chances) 13 ♖b3 0-0 14 c4, and White has a small advantage.

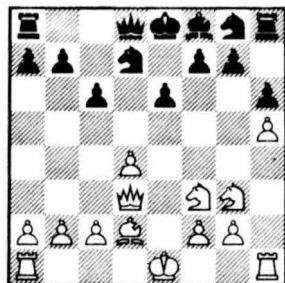
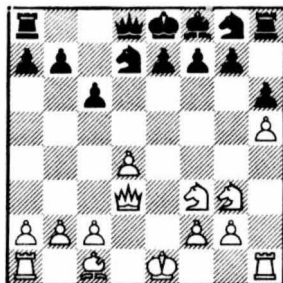
9 ... ♖h7×d3

In recent years 8 ... ♖gf6! has also been played occasionally. It offers White the chance to exchange the light-squared bishops himself (it should be noted that this idea dates back to the thirties). After 10 ♖×h7 ♖×h7 the following continuations are possible:

1) 11 ♗e2 e6 12 ♖d2 ♖e7 13 0-0-0 ♗b6 14 ♖e5 (Ljubojević-Larsen, Bugojno 1984, continued 14 ♖f5 ef 15 ♖he1) 14 ... ♖d8 15 ♖he1 0-0 16 ♖g6 ♖fe8 17 ♖×e7+ ♖×e7 18 ♖f5 ♖ee8 19 ♖d6 ♖f8 20 ♖f4 ♖df6 21 ♖e5 ♖d7 22 ♖d3, and White has a positional advantage (Belyavsky-Larsen, London 1984).

2) 11 ♖f4 e6 12 ♗e2 ♗a5+ 13 ♖d2 ♖b4 14 c3 ♖e7 15 0-0 ♖hf6 16 b4 ♗c7 17 ♖fe1 0-0 18 ♖e5 with better play for White (Grünfeld-Murey, Israel 1986).

10 ♗d1×d3



The starting position of the main variation with 8 h5. Black's plan consists usually in the following deployment of forces ♗c7, e6, ♖f6, and also 0-0-0. But it is important to know the sequence of moves from which this position originates.

In each case there are specific nuances in the opening stage.

We shall examine 10 ... ♗c7 (1) and 10 ... ♖f6 (2) as the main continuations.

But before, we shall deal with the somewhat less common 10 ... e6 from which the following independent variations can arise:

11 ♖d2 (after 11 b3 ♖gf6 12 ♖b2 ♗a5+ 13 ♖c3 ♖b4 14 ♖×b4 ♗×b4+ 15 ♗d2 ♗×d2+ 16 ♗×d2 c5! Black has equal play, Spassky-Karpov, 1974) and now:

(see diagram)

1) 11 ... ♖gf6 12 0-0-0 ♖e7 (interesting is 12 ... a5!?) 13 ♖he1 a5! 14 ♗e2 0-0 15 ♗b1 ♗b6 16 ♖e5 a4 17 c4 a3 18 b3 ♗×d4 19 ♖b4 ♗×e5 20 ♗×e5 ♖×e5 21 ♖×e7 ♖fe8 22 ♖b4 ♖ed7 with equal

play for Black (Hübner-Larsen, Tilburg 1980).

2) 11 ... ♗b6?! 12 0-0-0 ♖gf6 13 ♖e5 (after 13 c4! ♗a6 14 ♗b1 ♖d6 15 ♖e2 ♖g4 16 ♖e1 0-0-0 the prospects were even in a game Tatai-Larsen, Palma de Mallorca 1971) 13 ... ♖e7 14 ♖he1 (if 14 ♖d2 ♗e7 15 ♖h3 0-0-0 16 0-0-0 ♖gf6 17 ♖ge4 ♖×e4 18 ♖×e4 ♖f6 19 ♖c5 ♖d7 20 ♖e4 ♖f6 21 ♗e2 ♖×e4 22 ♗×e4 ♖f6 Black equalises, Geller-Bukić, Belgrade 1969) 14 ... ♖d8 15 ♗e2. White's position is preferable (Minić).

In recent years the continuation 11 ♖f4 emerged from which the following variations branch off:

1) 11 ... ♗a5+ (after 11 ... ♖gf6 12 0-0-0 ♖e7 13 ♖e4 ♖×e4 14 ♗×e4 ♗a5 15 ♗b1 ♖f6 16 ♗e2 White's position is preferable, Geller) 12 c3 (Timman-Miles, London 1984, continued 12 ♖d2 ♗c7 13 0-0-0 ♖gf6 14 ♗c2 ♖d6 15 ♖f5 ♖f4 16 ♖×f4 ♗×f4+ 17 ♖e3 0-0-0 18 ♖h4 ♗c7 19 ♖c4 ♖he8

20 ♖fe5 ♖b6 21 ♖×b6+ ab
 22 ♖d3 with better play for White)
 12 ... ♖gf6 13 a4 c5 14 0-0 ♖e7
 15 ♖fe1 ♖d5! 16 ♖d2 cd
 17 ♖×d4 0-0 18 c4 ♖b4 19 ♗b3
 ♗b6 20 ♖gf5!, and White has a
 clear advantage (Ermenkov–Gomez,
 1984 Olympiad).

2) 11 ... ♖b4+! 12 c3 ♖e7
 13 0-0-0 ♖gf6 14 ♖e5 (a game
 Ernst–Larsen, Gausdal 1985, went
 14 ♖b1 a5 15 ♖e4 ♖×e4
 16 ♗×e4 ♖f6 17 ♗d3 ♗d5
 18 ♖e5 ♗e4 with excellent play for
 Black) 14 ... 0-0 15 c4 c5 16 d5 ed
 17 ♖f5 ♖×e5 18 ♖×e5 ♖g4. The
 position is complex (Andreas–Rodri-
 guez, Palma Soriano 1983).

1

10 ... ♗d8–c7

White has now two main lines
 available: 11 ♖d2 (1a) and 11 ♖h4
 (1b).

But let us first look at the contin-
 uation 11 0-0! which still needs
 some testing. A game Vitolinsh–Mi-
 khalchishin (47th USSR Champion-
 ship, 1979) continued 11 ... e6
 12 c4 0-0-0 (12 ... ♖gf6 can be fol-
 lowed by 13 c5! and subsequently
 b2–b4–b5) 13 d5! ♖c5 (after
 13 ... ♖b6 14 ♖e3 ed 15 c5 ♖c4
 16 ♖d4 White retains a slight advan-
 tage).

14 ♗d4 ed 15 ♖f4 dcl 16 ♗×c4
 (if 16 ♖×c7 ♖×d4 17 ♖×d4
 ♗×c7 18 ♖ac1 b5, Black's chances
 are preferable) 16 ... ♖d6

17 ♖×d6 ♗×d6. After 18 ♗×f7
 the two sides have roughly equal
 chances. The game went 18 b4?
 ♖e6 19 b5 ♖e7, and Black ob-
 tained clear superiority.

1a

11 ♖c1–d2 ...

The most frequently used plan.
 White prepares to castle Q-side.

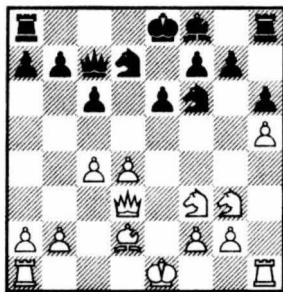
11 ... e7–e6

At this point the variations branch
 off yet again: 12 0-0-0 (x) and
 12 ♗e2 (y).

x

12 0-0-0 ...

More recently, 12 c4 ♖gf6 is fre-
 quently played. It usually transposes
 into the main variation. Independent
 variations may also emerge:



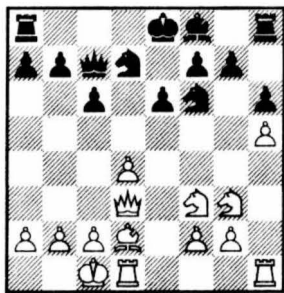
1) 13 ♖e4! ♖e7 14 0-0-0 ♖d8!
 15 ♖×f6+ (15 ♖dg1 c5) 15 ...
 ♖×f6 16 ♗c2 0-0 17 ♖h4?! (bet-
 ter is 17 ♖dg1 followed by g4
 with approximately equal play)
 17 ... c5! 18 ♖e3 a6 19 ♖b1 b5
 20 cb ab 21 dc ♖×d1+ 22 ♗×d1

♙×c5. Black's chances are preferable. x1

2) 13 ♖e2 0-0-0 14 c5! ♗d5 15 b4 ♙e7 16 ♖f1 e5 with unclear double-edged play (Ciocaltea-Vale-ro, Spain 1980).

3) 13 c5! b6 14 b4 a5 (also possible is 14 ... bc 15 bc — 15 dc a5! — 15 ... ♙e7 16 0-0 0-0 17 ♖fb1 ♖fb8 18 ♖b3 ♗d5 19 ♖e1 ♖×b3 20 ab ♖b8 with roughly equal play, Vasyukov-Podgayets, USSR 1975) 15 cb ♗×b6 16 ba ♗a6 17 ♗×a6 ♖×a6 18 ♗e5 ♙d6 19 ♗c4 ♙×g3 20 fg 0-0 21 ♖e2 c5 22 ♖h4 ♖c8, and the prospects in the end-game are even (Romm-Porath, Israel 1976).

12 ... ♗g8-f6

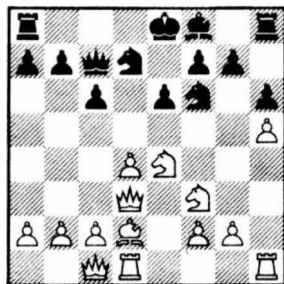


The critical position in which the following main plans are possible: 13 ♗e4 (x1), 13 c4 (x2) and 13 ♖b1 (x3).

The pawn sacrifice 13 ♗c5? is unsound: 13 ... ♗×e5 14 de ♗×e5 15 ♖he1 ♗c7 16 ♗f5 ♗d5 17 c4 0-0-0! (Shidkov-Podgayets, USSR 1971). The move 13 ♗e2 transposes into variation y.

13 ♗g3-e4

This common manoeuvre was introduced into practice by Geller.



13 ... 0-0-0

The most frequent reply. Other possible lines are:

1) 13 ... ♙e7! 14 ♖b1 (also worth considering is 14 ♗×f6+ ♗×f6 — 14 ... ♙×f6 15 ♗e4! — 15 ♗e5 0-0 16 g4 ♖fd8 17 g5 hg 18 h6 with good prospects for White) 14 ... c5! 15 ♗×f6+ ♗×f6 16 dc ♙×c5 17 ♗e2 (17 ♗b5+ ♗c6) 17 ... 0-0?! 18 ♗e5 ♖fd8 19 f4 ♖ac8 20 g4, and White has the initiative (Hübner-Korchnoi, match 1980).

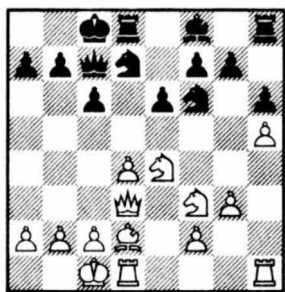
2) 13 ... ♗×e4 14 ♗×e4 ♗f6 15 ♗e2 0-0-0 16 g3 ♖d5 17 ♙f4 ♙d6 (favourable for White is 17 ... ♗a5 18 ♖b1 ♖h5 19 ♗e5! or 18 ... ♗×h5 19 ♙d2 ♗a6 20 c4 ♗f6 21 ♗e5) 18 ♗e5 (18 ♙×d6 ♖×d6 19 ♗e5 ♖hd8 20 c3 c5 leads to equality) 18 ... ♙×e5 19 ♙×e5 ♗a5 20 ♖b1 ♖hd8

21 g4, and White's initiative makes itself clearly felt (Trifunović).

3) 13 ... ♘d6? 14 ♖×d6+ (in a game Chandler-Seirawan, London 1984, the chances were even after 14 g3! b5 15 ♖b1 a5 16 ♖×f6+ ♖×f6 17 ♖e5! ♘×e5 18 de ♘×e5 19 ♘c3 ♘c7) 14 ... ♘×d6 15 ♘e2 (equal play results from 15 ♖b1 b5 16 ♘e2 ♘d5, Adianto-Seirawan, Indonesia 1983) 15 ... ♘d5 16 ♖b1 ♖×h5 17 ♖e5 ♖hf6 18 f3 b5 19 g4 ♖g8 20 ♖he1 ♖b6 21 b3!, and White has the better position.

14 g2-g3 ...

After 14 c4 c5 15 ♖×f6 ♖×f6! 16 ♘c3 cd 17 ♖×d4 a6 Black has very good prospects of equality.



After the move in the main variation Black has two main lines at his disposal:

14 ... ♖×e4 (variation 1) and 14 ... ♖c5 (variation 2).

Hardly favourable is 14 ... ♖g4? 15 ♘e2 ♖df6 16 ♘f4 ♘a5 17 ♖×f6 gf 18 ♖d2 f5 (Geller-Petrosian, Moscow 1967).

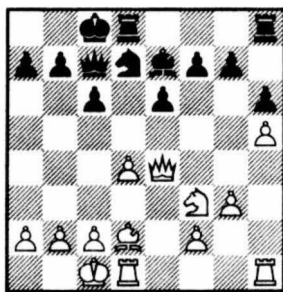
White was able to obtain an over-

whelming advantage by playing 19 f3 ♖f6 20 ♖b3 ♘b5 21 c4.

In Tsheshkovsky-Kasparov (46th USSR Championship, 1978) Black tested 14 ... c5! This was followed by 15 ♘f4 c4 16 ♘e2 (after 16 ♘×c7 cd 17 ♖×f6 ♖×c7 18 ♖×d7 dc 19 ♖×c2 ♖×d7 20 ♖e5+ ♖e8 21 d5 ♘d6 the prospects are even) 16 ... ♘c6 17 ♖×f6 gf 18 d5! ed 19 ♖d4 ♘a6 20 ♖b1 ♘d6 21 ♘f3 ♘×f4 22 ♘×f4 ♖e5 23 ♘f5+ ♖b8 24 f4 with somewhat better play for White.

Variation 1

14 ... ♖f6×e4
15 ♘d3×e4 ♘f8-e7



Here, Black can also opt for other alternatives:

1) 15 ... ♖f6 16 ♘e2 ♘d6! (Tal-Hübner, Montreal 1979, went 16 ... c5 17 dc ♘×c5 18 ♖h4! ♖b8? 19 ♘f4 ♘d6 20 ♖×d6 ♖×d6 21 ♖e5!, and White has a strong attack; it would have been correct to put up with 18 ... ♘e7 and the slightly inferior play) 17 c4

c5 18 ♘c3 cd 19 ♘×d4 (or 19 ♘×d4 a6 20 ♘b3 ♗c6 21 ♘a5 ♗c7 22 ♘b3 ♗c6 with equal play, Magerramov–Pavadian, USSR 1979) 19 ... ♗a5! 20 ♖b1 ♘c7 (20 ... ♘×h5 21 c5) 21 c5 ♗a4! 22 b3 ♗c6 23 ♘e5 ♘×e5 24 ♘×e5 ♖×d1+ or 24 ... ♖hg8 (Polovodin–Kharitonov, USSR 1980) with roughly equal prospects.

2) 15 ... ♘d6 16 c4 c5 17 ♖b1 a6 18 d5 ♘f6 19 ♗c2, and White has superiority (Matanović–Marković, Yugoslavia 1967).

16 ♖c1–b1 ♖h8–e8

17 ♗e4–e2 ...

A new continuation. In earlier years mainly 17 c4 was played, e. g. 17 ... c5 18 ♘f4 ♘d6 19 ♘e5 ♖e7! with equal chances (Gheorghiu–Hort, 1966 Olympiad).

17 ... ♘e7–d6

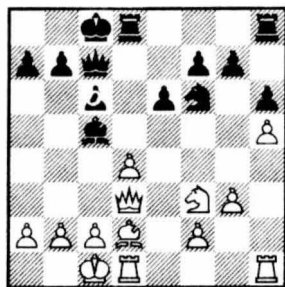
A game Kasparov–Vukić (Skara 1980) continued 18 ♖he1 ♖e7! (18 ... ♘f6 19 ♘e5 c5 20 dc ♘×e5 21 ♗×e5 promises better chances in the battle for equality, and Black accepts the somewhat inferior play, Geller–Kasparov, 46th USSR Championship, 1978) 19 c4 c5 20 ♘c3 ♘f6 21 ♘e5 cd. White was able to achieve a clear advantage after 22 ♘×d4! ♘×e5 (22 ... ♘b4 23 ♖h1 is in White's favour) 23 ♘×e5 ♖×d1+ 24 ♖×d1 ♗c6 25 g4 ♖d7 26 ♖e1.

Variation 2

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 de 4 ♘×e4 ♘f5 5 ♘g3 ♘g6 6 h4 h6 7 ♘f3 ♘d7 8 h5 ♘h7 9 ♘d3 ♘×d3 10 ♗×d3 ♗c7 11 ♘d2 e6 12 0-0-0 ♘g6 13 ♘e4 0-0-0 14 g3)

14 ... ♘d7–c5

15 ♘e4×c5 ♘f8×c5



This original plan was introduced into practice by Petrosian. It leads to lively piece play, after which the following variations may arise:

1) 16 ♖b1 ♘d6 17 c4 c5 18 ♘c3 (or 18 ♖c1 b6 19 ♗e2 ♗b7 with equality, I. Zaitsev–Petrosian, Moscow 1968) 18 ... a6, followed by 19 ... cd, and Black obtains free play in the centre and good prospects of achieving equality.

2) 16 ♘f4 ♘d6 17 ♘e5 ♘×e5 18 ♘×e5 c5 19 ♗c4 ♖d5 20 f4 ♘e4 with equal play (Belinkov–Podgayets, USSR 1968).

3) 16 ♖h4! ♘d6 17 ♗e2 ♖d7! 18 ♘e5 ♘×e5 19 de ♘d5 20 ♖g4! ♖hd8 21 ♖×g7 ♘b6!, and Black has sufficient counterplay

for his pawn (Suetin–Shamkovich, Tbilisi 1970).

4) 16 c3 ♖d6 17 ♗e2 ♖d7 18 c4 c5 19 ♖c3 cd 20 ♖×d4 a6 21 ♖b3! ♜hg8 22 ♜d2 ♖e7 with slightly better prospects for White (Kapengut–Podgayets, Dubna 1970).

5) 16 ♗c4! ♖d6 17 ♗a4 ♖b8 18 ♖e5 ♖d5 19 f4 (19 ♖c4 ♖b6!) 19 ... ♖b6 20 ♗b3 ♖×e5 21 de ♖d5 (Ljubojević–Karpov, Linares 1981). After 22 ♗f3 ♜d7 23 ♗g4 ♜hd8 24 ♗×g7 ♗b6 25 ♗g4 ♖e3 26 ♖×e3 ♗×e3+ 27 ♖b1 ♜×d1+ 28 ♜×d1 ♜×d1+ 29 ♗×d1 ♖c8! or 22 c4? ♖e7 23 ♖e3 c5 Black equalises the game.

6) 16 ♗e2 ♖b6! 17 ♖f4 (17 ♜h4! ♜d7 18 c4 c5 19 ♖c3 is not bad either) 17 ... ♗e7 18 c4 ♜he8 19 ♗e5 (19 ♜h4!) 19 ... ♖c7 20 ♗×c7+ ♗×c7 21 ♖×c7 ♖×c7 22 ♜h4 with a slight white superiority (Karpov–Miles, Amsterdam 1985).

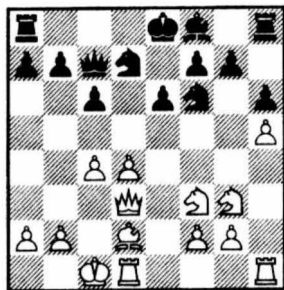
7) 16 c4 ♖b6 17 ♖c3 (worth mentioning is 17 ♖b1; de Firmian–Miles, Tunis 1985, continued 17 ... c5?! 18 ♖f4! ♗e7 19 d5 ♜he8 20 ♜he1 ♗f8 21 ♖e5 ♖c7 22 ♗f3 – 22 ♗a3! – 22 ... ed 23 cd ♖d6 24 ♜e3 after which Black had to fight for equality) 17 ... ♜he8. After c6–c5 Black achieves equal play (Tal–Miles, Bugojno 1984, and van der Wiel–Miles, Tilburg 1984).

x2

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖f5 5 ♖g3 ♖g6 6 h4 h6 7 ♖f3 ♖d7 8 h5 ♖h7 9 ♖d3 ♖×d3 10 ♗×d3 ♗c7 11 ♖d2 e6 12 0-0-0 ♖gf6)

13 c2–c4

This move has been played more and more frequently in recent years.



Black now has the following lines to choose between:

- 1) 13 ... 0-0-0 14 ♖c3 c5 15 ♖b1 cd 16 ♖×d4 a6 17 ♖b3 ♖e7 (another continuation is 17 ... ♖c5 18 ♗f3 ♜×d1+ 19 ♜×d1 ♖e7 20 ♖a5 ♗e5 21 ♜e1 ♗d6! with approximate equality) 18 ♖a5 (interesting is 18 ♗f3!) 18 ... b6 19 ♖c3 ♖c5 20 ♗f3 ♗b7 21 ♗×b7+ ♖×b7 22 ♖×c5+ bc 23 f3 ♜×d1+ 24 ♜×d1 ♖c6, and Black has good prospects of equalising (Spassky–Portisch, match 1980).
- 2) 13 ... b5! 14 ♖e5?! ♖×e5 15 de ♗×e5! 16 ♜he1 bc 17 ♗c2 ♗b5 18 a4 (18 ♖f5 ♜d8 19 ♖×g7+! ♖×g7 20 ♜×e6+ fe 21 ♗g6+ ♖d7! is favourable for

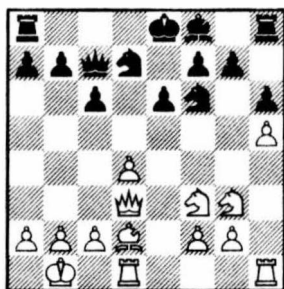
Black) 18 ... ♗b7! with black superiority (Shakarov).

3) 13 ... ♖d6 14 ♖e4 ♖f4 with approximate equality.

x3

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖f5 5 ♖g3 ♖g6 6 h4 h6 7 ♖f3 ♖d7 8 h5 ♖h7 9 ♖d3 ♖×d3 10 ♗×d3 ♗c7 11 ♖d2 e6 12 0-0-0 ♖gf6)

13 ♖c1-b1



This prophylactic move is also often used in practice. After 13 ... 0-0-0 14 c4 the game often transposes into the variation 13 c4. But other independent lines can also emerge after 13 ... 0-0-0:

1) 14 ♗e2 ♖d6 15 ♖e4 ♖×e4 16 ♗×e4 ♖f6 (weaker is 16 ... c5?! 17 dcl ♖×c5 18 ♗c4 ♖he8?! 19 ♖e3 ♖f8 20 ♖f4 ♗c6 21 ♖e5 ♗×g2 22 b4 f6 23 ♖g6 ♗f3 24 ♖de1 with advantage to White, Kurajica-Bagirov, Titovo Užice 1978; better is 18 ... ♖hg8) 17 ♗e2 ♖he8 18 c4, and Black holds a solid defensive position, but White's position is more active.

2) 14 c4 c5 15 ♗e2 (or 15 ♗c2 ♖d6 16 ♖e4 ♖×e4 17 ♗×e4 ♖f6 18 ♗e2 ♗c6 19 ♖e5 ♖×e5 20 de ♗e4 21 ♗×e4 ♖×e4 22 ♖e3 ♖×d1+ 23 ♖×d1 b6 with roughly equal play, Vasyukov-A. Zaitsev, USSR 1969) 15 ... ♖d6 16 ♖e4 ♖×e4 17 ♗×e4 ♖e7 18 ♖f4 ♖d6 19 ♖×d6 ♗×d6 20 ♗e3 ♖he8 21 ♖d2 a6 22 ♖hd1 ♗c7, and Black has a sound position (Matulović-Hort, Palma de Mallorca 1970).

y

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖f5 5 ♖g3 ♖g6 6 h4 h6 7 ♖f3 ♖d7 8 h5 ♖h7 9 ♖d3 ♖×d3 10 ♗×d3 ♗c7 11 ♖d2 e6)

12 ♗d3-e2 ...

This manoeuvre was used for the first time by Spassky in the match with Petrosian in 1966. It is his idea to occupy e5 in order to fortify his centre. A complex and strategically and tactically sophisticated positional struggle ensues.

12 ... ♖g8-f6

In addition to this move Black also has the following continuations at his disposal:

1) 12 ... 0-0-0 13 ♖e5 (13 0-0-0 is not bad either, e. g. 13 ... ♖d6?! 14 ♖e4 ♖e7 15 c4 ♖gf6 16 ♖c3 ♖he8 17 g3 ♖f8 18 ♖b1 ♗a5! 19 ♖e5 with advantage to White, Spassky-Barcza, 1970) 13 ... ♖b6 (or 13 ... ♖×e5 14 de ♖e7 15 0-0-0 c5 16 f4 ♖c6 17 c3,

and White's position is better) 14 c3 ♖f6 15 0-0! ♗d6 16 a4 ♜hf8 17 a5 ♖bd7 18 f4 ♖b8 19 b4 with a massive attack by White on the Q-side (Nikitin-Lasaryev, USSR 1966).

2) 12 ... ♗d6 13 ♖e4 ♗f4 14 ♖e5! ♗×d2+ (after 14 ... ♖×e5 15 ♗×f4 ♖d3+ 16 ♗×d3 ♗×f4 17 g3 ♗c7 18 ♗a3! White has strong pressure on the dark squares; also after 14 ... ♗×e5 15 de ♖×e5 16 ♗b4 0-0-0 17 f4 c5 18 fe cb 19 0-0 ♗×e5 20 ♜×f7 ♗d4+ 21 ♖f2 ♖f6 22 ♜d1 ♗b6 23 ♜×d8+ ♜×d8 24 ♜×g7 ♜d5 25 g4! Black's position is difficult, since the threats 26 ♜g6 and 26 ♗f3 are very unpleasant) 15 ♖×d2 ♖×e5 16 de 0-0-0 17 ♖c4 ♗b8 18 ♖d6 f6 19 f4, and White exerts strong pressure on the centre which promises him some advantage.

13 0-0-0 ...

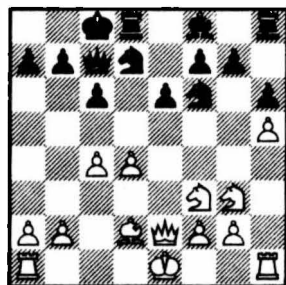
The following continuations are also possible:

1) 13 c4 0-0-0 (Spassky-Karpov, match 1974, went 13 ... ♗d6 14 ♖f5 ♗f4 15 ♗×f4 ♗×f4 16 ♖e3 ♗c7 — 16 ... 0-0! 17 0-0-0 b5! — 17 0-0-0 b5! 18 cb cb+ 19 ♗b1 0-0 20 g4! with initiative to White).

(see diagram)

White has now several alternatives to choose between, including:

1a) 14 c5! ♜g8 (after 14 ... ♖d5



15 b4 ♗e7 16 ♗f1! ♜he8 17 ♜b1 e5 18 de ♗f8 19 ♜e1 ♜e6 20 ♖f5 ♜de8 21 ♖5d4 ♜e6 22 e6, Ciocaltea-Pranitsky, Sinaia 1976, or 14 ... e5! 15 de ♖e8 16 0-0 ♗×c5 17 b4, Ciocaltea-Sribar, Istres 1976, White's prospects are better) 15 b4 g6 16 ♜b1 gh 17 ♗f1 ♜g4 18 ♜b3! ♗b8 19 ♖×h5 ♖×h5 20 ♜×h5 ♖f6 21 ♜e5 ♗g7 22 b5 ♖d5 23 b6 ab 24 cb ♗d6 with approximately equal prospects (Karpov-Hort, Ljubljana 1975).

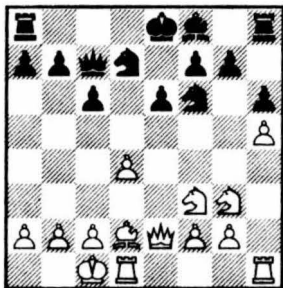
b) 14 ♖e5 ♖×e5 15 de ♖d7 16 f4 ♖c5 17 0-0-0 ♖d3+ 18 ♗b1 ♖×b2! 19 ♗×b2 ♗b6+ 20 ♗c2 ♗a6 21 ♗b1 (21 ♗c3? ♗a4+ 22 ♗b1 ♗b4 or 21 ♜b1 ♗×a2+ 22 ♜b2 ♗a4+ 23 ♗b1 ♜d4 is dangerous for White) 21 ... ♗b6+ 22 ♗c2 with a draw (Klovan-Andreyev, correspondence game 1976).

1c) 14 ♗c3 c5! 15 0-0-0 cd 16 ♖×d4 a6 17 ♖f3 ♗e7 18 ♗b1 ♜he8 19 ♜he1 ♗b6 20 ♗d4 ♗c5 21 ♗c2 ♖b8! 22 ♗×c5 ♗×c5 23 ♜×d8+ ♜×d8, and Black has

equal play (Haág-Barcza, Hungary 1975).

2) 13 ♖h4 0-0-0 14 ♖e5 ♖×e5 15 de ♖d7 16 f4 ♖e7 (a game Matulović-Nikolac, Yugoslavia 1978, continued 16 ... ♖c5 17 0-0-0 ♖d5, and after 18 ♖hh1 ♖e7 19 c4! ♖d3+ 20 ♖b1 ♖d7 21 ♖e3 ♖hd8 22 ♖e4 f6 23 ef gf 24 ♖f2! ♖×f2 25 ♖×d7 ♖×d7 26 ♖×f2 the prospects were clearly better for White) 17 ♖h3 (17 ♖h1 is probably better for a later transference of the rook to d1) 17 ... ♖b6 18 0-0-0 ♖d5 19 ♖e3 ♖×d1+ 20 ♖×d1 ♖d8 21 ♖e1 ♖d5 22 ♖h1 (Matulović-Nikolić, Yugoslavia 1978). With 22 ... ♖b8 Black was able to equalise the game.

3) 13 ♖e5 c5 14 ♖×d7 ♖×d7 15 0-0-0 0-0-0 16 ♖a5! ♖e8 17 dc ♖a4 18 b4! (simpler is 18 ♖c3 ♖×c5 with approximate equality) 18 ... ♖d5 19 ♖c4 ♖a3+ 20 ♖d2 ♖b8 21 ♖e4 ♖c8 22 ♖h3 ♖a4 with double-edged play (Murray-M. Tseitlin, Moscow 1975).

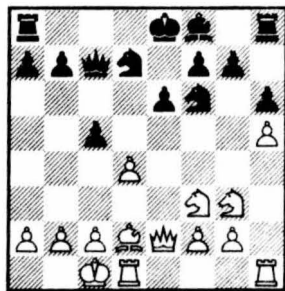


13 ... 0-0-0

Again it is not easy for Black to choose between the following:

1) 13 ... ♖d6 14 ♖f5 ♖f4 15 ♖×g7+! (15 ♖e3 0-0-0 16 g3 ♖×e3 17 ♖×e3 also merits consideration, Mnatsakanian-Rytov, USSR 1970) 15 ... ♖f8 16 ♖×e6+ fe 17 ♖×e6 with three pawns for the piece. Klován-Rytov (USSR 1970) continued 17 ... ♖d6! 18 ♖f5 ♖×d2+ 19 ♖×d2 with double-edged play.

2) 13 ... c5, and now:



2a) 14 ♖h4! ♖b6 (14 ... 0-0-0 15 dc is favourable for White) 15 ♖f4 ♖c6 16 ♖e5 ♖a4 17 ♖c1, and White's pressure is felt clearly. This is demonstrated by the following variation recommended by Minić:

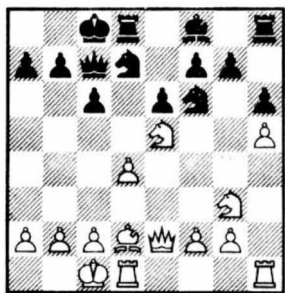
17 ... ♖×a2 18 ♖b5+ ♖bd7 19 ♖×d7 ♖×d7 20 ♖×b7 ♖a1+ 21 ♖d2 ♖a5+ 22 c3 ♖d8 23 ♖c7 ♖c8 24 ♖c6, and White's threats are very dangerous.

2b) 14 ♖f5! 0-0-0 (or 14 ... ♖c8 15 ♖b1! cd 16 ♖3×d4 ♖c4 17 ♖f3 with a strong white initiative) 15 ♖e3 ♖b8! 16 ♖h4 ♖c6

17 ♖c3 ♖e7 18 dc ♖×c5 19 ♖c4 ♖×e3+ 20 ♗×c3 ♖×d1+ 21 ♖×d1, and White has a small advantage (Faibisovich–Okhotnik, USSR 1979).

2c) 14 c4! 0-0-0 (14 ... cd 15 ♖×d4 ♖c8 16 ♖b1 promises White some lively piece play in the centre) 15 ♖e5! ♖b6 16 ♖a5 ♖×d4 17 ♖×d4 cd 18 ♖b1 ♖b8 19 ♖c1 ♖c5 (19 ... ♖d6 20 c5!) 20 a3 ♖c8 with double-edged play (Korsunsky–Bykhovsky, USSR 1979).
2d) 14 ♖b1 0-0-0 (not good is 14 ... cd? 15 ♖×d4 a6 16 ♖×e6! fe 17 ♗×e6+ ♖d8 18 ♖he1 ♖e8 19 ♖c3 ♗c6 20 ♖×f6+! gf 21 ♖×d7+ ♗×d7 22 ♗b6+! with a winning attack by White, Kupreichik–Castillon, 1972) 15 c4 ♖d6 16 ♖e4 ♖×e4 17 ♗×e4 ♖f6 18 ♗e2 ♖he8 19 ♖c3 ♖e7 20 ♖e5 cd 21 ♖×d4 with a slight advantage to White (Kaválek–Karpov, Bad Kissingen 1979).

14 ♖f3–e5



Black now has two main lines: 14 ... ♖b6 (y1) and 14 ... ♖×e5 (y2).

14 ... ♖b8 (y3) has not been analysed much.

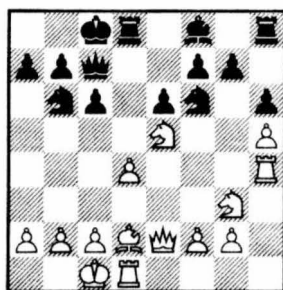
y1

14 ... ♖d7–b6

This is at present Black's main continuation. Black avoids the cramping exchange on e5 and wishes to attack d4 with c6–c5 and organise counterplay in the centre.

14 ♖d2–a5 ...

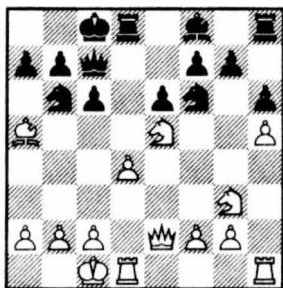
The plan used most frequently by White. Another possible move is 15 ♖h4, and now:



1) 15 ... ♖d6 16 ♖a5 ♗e7! (if 16 ... ♖×e5, so 17 de ♖×d1+ 18 ♖×d1 ♖fd7 19 ♖e4 – or 19 ♖g4! ♖g8 20 f4 – 19 ... ♖d8 20 ♖c1 ♖c5 21 ♖g4! ♖d5 22 ♖×g7 ♖b3+ 23 ab ♖×a5 24 c4 ♖×e5 25 ♖g8+ ♖d7 26 ♖d2, and the threat of 27 ♗×h6 is very unpleasant, Haág–Flesch, Salgótarján 1967) 17 c4 ♖fd7 18 ♖g4 ♖×e5 19 de ♖c7 20 ♖×g7 ♖×d1+ 21 ♖×d1 ♗c5 with equality (Kayumov–Peresypkin, USSR 1975).

2) 15 ... c5 16 ♖a5 cd (a game Ubi-

lava-Peresyptin, Daugavpils 1974, went 16 ... ♖d6 17 dc ♖×e5 18 ♖×d8+ ♖×d8 19 cb ♖f4+ 20 ♖b1 ab 21 ♖×b6 ♗×b6 22 ♖×f4 with advantage to White) 17 ♖d×d4 ♖c5 18 ♖c4 ♖d5 19 ♖d3 ♖d7! (weaker is 19 ... ♖b8 20 b4 ♖e3+ 21 ♗×e3 ♖×c4 22 ♖×c7+) 20 ♖c3 ♖c8 21 ♖e4 ♖×e4 22 ♗×e4 ♗b8 23 ♖×c5+ ♖d×c5 24 ♖×c5 ♖×c5 25 ♖c3 with a clear advantage to White (Ubilava-Fyodorov, USSR 1977).



After the move 15 ♖a5 in the main variation two lines may develop: 15 ... ♖d5 (variation 1) and 15 ... c5 (variation 2).

Variation 1

15 ... ♖d8-d5

The most common reply. Black activates his rook and attacks the bishop.

16 ♖a5×b6 ...

Unfavourable is the sharp continuation 16 b4! ♖×a5! 17 ba ♖a3+ 18 ♖b1 ♖a4 19 ♗f3 (19 ♗e1 ♖c5!) 19 ... ♖b4 20 ♖d3 ♗×a5

21 ♖e2 ♖d5 (a game Byrne-Saidy, New York 1969, went 21 ... ♖f8 22 ♖b3 — 22 c4! — 22 ... ♖d5 23 ♖c4 with better prospects for White) 22 ♖h3 (or 22 ♗×f7 ♖ac3+ 23 ♖×c3 ♖×c3 24 ♗×e6+ ♖b8 25 ♖×c3 ♖×c3+ 26 ♖b2 ♖d5 27 ♗d6+ ♖a8 28 ♗c5 ♗d2 29 ♖d3 ♖e8, and Black has dangerous initiative, Tarnai) 22 ... f6 23 ♖g6 ♖d8 24 ♖gf4 ♖dc3+! 25 ♖×c3 ♖×c3, and White's position is difficult (Schepers-Tarnai, correspondence game 1972).

16 ... a7×b6

17 c2-c4 ...

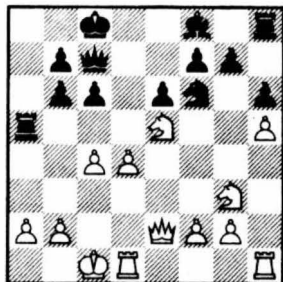
17 f4 (I) was played in a game Romanishin-Bagirov (Lvov 1978). It is rather interesting, but has not been tested much to date. After 17 ... ♖d6?! 18 ♖b1 ♖d8 19 c3 ♖b8 20 ♖f1 ♖×e5 21 fe ♖h7 22 ♖e3 ♖5d7 23 ♖c4 ♖g5 (or 23 ... ♖d5 24 ♖d6 c5 25 c4 ♖×d4 26 ♖b5 with advantage to White) 24 ♖hf1 White's prospects are clearly better.

17 ... ♖d5-d8

Another possibility is 17 ♖a5!?, e. g.:

(see diagram)

18 ♖b1 ♖d6 19 f4 ♖d8 20 ♖d2 (if 20 ♖e4 ♖×e4 21 ♗×c4 ♖b8 22 b3 b5 23 c5 ♖×e5 24 de ♖d5 25 ♖×d5 ed, the chances are even, Jansa-Podgayets, Sombor 1970; weaker is 21 ... f6 22 ♖d3 ♗d7 23 g3 ♖f8 24 ♖c1, and White's po-

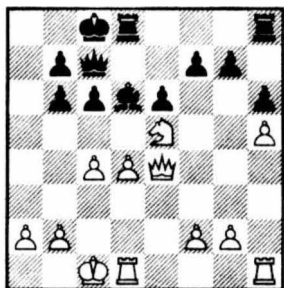


sition is preferable, Bednarsky-Smyslov, Palma de Mallorca 1967; worth mentioning is 20 ♖hf1 ♖e7 21 ♖e4, Widera-Tarnai, correspondence game 1974, or also 20 ♖d3 c5 21 ♖hd1, Ćirić, with slightly better play for White) 20 ... b5 (20 ... c5 21 ♖hd1 gives White the better chances) 21 c5 ♖f8 22 ♖e4, and White's pressure makes itself strongly felt (Trifunović).

18 ♖g3-e4 ♖f6×e4

Bad is 18 ... c5? 19 ♖c3 ♖d6 20 ♖b5 ♖e7 21 dc ♖×c5 22 ♖a7+ ♖c7 23 ♖×f7, and White has a won position (Tatai-Pomar, Malaga 1968).

19 ♖e2×c4 ♖f8-d6



The critical position in which the following continuations are possible:

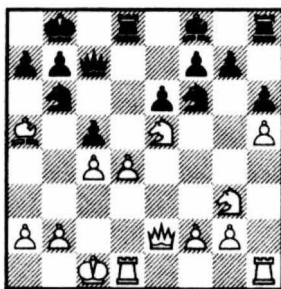
1) 20 ♖f3 ♖he8 21 ♖b1 ♖e7 22 ♖he1 ♖f6 23 g3 ♖c7 24 a3 (Spassky-Pomar, Palma de Mallorca 1968).

2) 20 f4 f5 21 ♖e2 ♖×e5 22 ♖×e5 ♖×e5 23 de ♖c7 (Meckling-Pomar, 1968 Olympiad). In both cases White retains a marginal advantage.

Variation 2

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖f5 5 ♖g3 ♖g6 6 h4 h6 7 ♖f3 ♖d7 8 h5 ♖h7 9 ♖d3 ♖×d3 10 ♖×d3 ♖c7 11 ♖d2 e6 12 ♖e2 ♖gf6 13 0-0-0 0-0-0 14 ♖e5 ♖b6 15 ♖a5)

15 ... c6-c5
16 c2-c4 ♖c8-b8



Other alternatives are:

1) 16 ... ♖×d4 17 ♖b1? (after 17 ♖×d4 cd 18 ♖b1, 18 ... ♖d6? is not good because of 19 c5!; but 18 ... ♖c5 is playable) 17 ... ♖×d1+ (after 17 ... ♖d6 18 ♖×d4 cd 19 c5! Black's position is hopeless) 18 ♖×d1 ♖g8 19 f4

♙d6 20 ♖×f7 ♙×f4 21 ♜×e6+ ♖b8 22 ♖f5 ♙e8 23 ♜×e8+ ♖×e8 24 ♙d8+ ♜×d8 25 ♖×d8 ♖×c4 26 ♙c3 with advantage to White (A. Rodriguez-Armas, Havana 1980).

2) 16 ... cd 17 ♖b1 ♙d6 18 c5!, and White has a strong attack.

17 d4×c5 ...

A good alternative is also 17 ♖b1! ♙d6 18 dc ♙×c5 19 f4 with a strong white initiative.

17 ... ♙f8×c5

18 f2-f4 ♙c5-d4

19 ♖c1-b1 ...

A game Marić-Vukić (Yugoslavia 1967) went 19 ♖×f7 ♜×f7 20 ♙×d4 ♙×d4 21 ♜e5+ ♜c7 with equality.

19 ... ♙d4×e5

20 f4×e5 ♖f6-d7

21 ♖g3-e4

White has the initiative (Runau-Moghadam, Great Britain 1971/72).

y2

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♙f5 5 ♖g3 ♙g6 6 h4 h6 7 ♖f3 ♖d7 8 h5 ♙h7 9 ♙d3 ♙×d3 10 ♜×d3 ♜c7 11 ♙d2 e6 12 ♜e2 ♖g6 13 0-0-0 0-0-0 14 ♖e5)

14 ... ♖d7×e5

15 d4×e5 ♖f6-d7

In a game Spassky-Botvinnik (Moscow 1966) Black played 15 ... ♖d5 16 f4 c5 17 c4 ♖b4 18 ♙×b4 ♙×d1+ 19 ♙×d1 cb 20 ♖e4 ♙e7 21 ♖d6+ ♖b8, and White has the edge. With 22 g3!

♙f8 23 ♖b1 a6 24 ♜e4 f5 25 ef White would have been able to consolidate his advantage.

16 f2-f4 ♙f8-e7

17 ♖g3-e4 ...

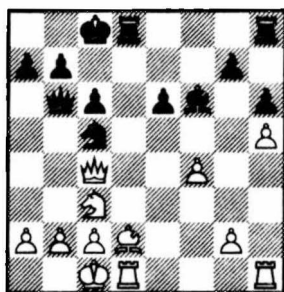
Even after 17 ♙e3 ♜a5 18 ♖b1 ♖c5 19 c3 White has a slight advantage (Suetin).

17 ... ♖d7-c5

18 ♖e4-c3 f7-f6

19 e5×f6 ♙e7×f6

20 ♜e2-c4 ♜c7-b6



21 b2-b4!

A game Spassky-Petrosian (1966) continued 21 ... ♖a6 (if 21 ... ♜a6 22 ♜×a6! ♖×a6 23 ♖e4 ♙e7 24 a3 ♙hg8 25 g3 ♙c7 26 ♙e3 b6 27 ♙d4 or also after 23 ... ♙d4 24 ♖×f6 gf 25 c3 ♙e4 26 g4 ♖c7 27 g5 ♖d5 28 ♙df1 Black has a difficult defence in the end-game) 22 ♖e4 ♖c7 23 ♙he1. White has a persistent positional superiority.

y3

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♙f5 5 ♖g3 ♙g6 6 h4 h6 7 ♖f3 ♖d7 8 h5 ♙h7 9 ♙d3 ♙×d3

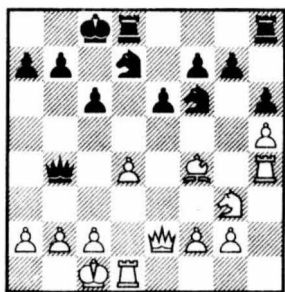
10 ♜×d3 ♜c7 11 ♠d2 e6 12 ♜e2
 ♜f6 13 0-0-0 0-0-0 14 ♜e5)
 14 ... ♜d7-b8!?

This retreat looks paradoxical: the black bishop retreats into a passive position. Black, however, by aiming at d4 wishes to launch counterplay with ♠d6 and c6-c5.

15 ♜h1-h4 ♠f8-d6
 16 ♜e5-c4! ♜b8-d7

After 16 ... ♠×g3? 17 fg ♜×g3
 18 ♜dh1 White has dangerous threats in store with 19 ♠f4 (Bai-
 kov-M. Tseitlin, Moscow 1974).

17 ♜c4×d6+ ♜c7×d6
 18 ♠d2-f4 ♜d6-b4



19 d4-d5! ♜f6×d5

Other possibilities are:

1) 19 ... cd 20 ♜d3 ♜b6 21 ♜b3!
 ♜e7 (21 ... ♜f8 22 ♜e5!) 22 ♜f5
 ♜c5 23 ♜b5 with a powerful attack
 for White (Ivanović-Vuković, Vuko-
 var 1976).

2) 19 ... ed? 20 ♜d4! ♜c5 21 ♜f5
 ♜de8 22 ♜d1, and Black's position
 looks poor.

20 ♜g3-c4 ...

If 20 ♠g5? ♜c3! 21 ♜d2
 ♜×a2+ 22 ♜b1 ♜c3+! 23 ♜c1

♜a5!, White even suddenly loses the
 game (Knapp).

20 ... e6-e5

21 ♠d2 ♜e7 22 ♜h3 leads to a
 complex position with slightly better
 prospects for White.

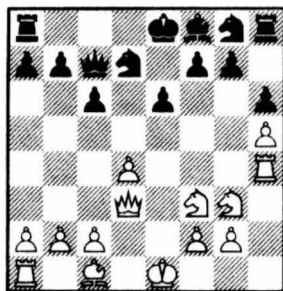
1b

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4
 ♠f5 5 ♜g3 ♠g6 6 h4 h6 7 ♜f3
 ♜d7 8 h5 ♠h7 9 ♠d3 ♠×d3
 10 ♜×d3 ♜c7)

11 ♜h1-h4 ...

This manoeuvre was introduced
 into practice in the late 1950s. White
 tries to deploy the king's rook in an
 active position in conjunction with
 the positional threat 12 ♠f4. Black
 has to seize every chance he gets in
 order to obtain equality.

11 ... e7-e6



12 ♠c1-f4 ♠f8-d6

Consideration deserves 12 ...
 ♜a5+ 13 ♠d2 ♜b6 (in a game
 Martinović-Miles, Amsterdam 1985,
 White obtained a small advantage
 after 13 ... ♜c7 14 0-0-0 ♠e7 —
 14 ... ♜gf6 — 15 ♜h3 0-0-0
 16 ♜e2 ♠d6 17 ♜e4 ♠f4

18 ♖h4 — ♗e5!7 ♚ 18 ... ♘×d2+ 19 ♗e×d2 ♗e7 20 ♗c4 ♗f5 21 ♖hh1 ♖he8 22 ♖d3) 14 0-0-0 ♘e7 15 ♖hh1 ♗gf6 16 c4 (in a game Watson–Miles, Great Britain 1985, the continuation 16 ♖he1 a5?1 17 ♗e5 a4 18 ♗×f7! a3 19 b3 ♗×f7 20 ♖×e6 led to a strong attack for White) 16 ... ♗a6 17 ♗b1 ♘d6 18 ♗e2 ♗g4 19 ♘e1 0-0-0 with equality (Shelyandinov–Sakharov, correspondence game 1977).

13 ♘f4×d6 ♗c7×d6

14 ♗g3–e4 ...

A game Geller–Bukić (Belgrade 1969) continued 14 ♗d2 ♗e7 15 ♖h3 0-0-0 16 0-0-0 ♗gf6 17 ♗ge4 ♗×e4 18 ♗×e4 ♗f6 19 ♗c5 ♗d7 20 ♗e4 (or 20 ♗b3 ♗g5+ 21 ♗b1 ♗f6 with equal chances) 20 ... ♗f6 21 ♗e2 ♗×e4 22 ♗×e4 ♗f6, and Black gets equal play.

14 ... ♗d6–e7

After 14 ... ♗b4+ 15 ♗c3 ♗×c3+ 16 bc ♗e7 17 ♗c5 ♗gf6 (or 17 ... b6 18 ♗×d7 ♗×d7 19 ♖g4!) 18 ♗×b7 ♖hc8 19 ♗e5 c5 20 ♖a5 ♖c7 21 0-0-0 White is able to apply strong pressure (Spassky–Botvinnik, Leiden 1970).

15 ♗d3–a3!7 ...

After 15 0-0-0 ♗gf6 16 ♗×f6+ gf Black has a solid position (Gli-gorić–Petrosian, Candidates Tournament 1959).

15 ... ♗e7×a3

16 b2×a3 ♗e8–e7

A game Larsen–Addison (Palma de Mallorca 1970) went 16 ... ♗gf6!7 17 ♗d6+ ♗e7 18 ♗×b7 ♖hc8 19 ♖b1 ♖c7 20 ♖b3 ♖ac8 21 c4 c5 22 ♗a5 cd 23 ♗×d4 ♖c5 24 ♖b5 a6, and Black had good counterplay.

17 ♖a1–b1 ...

17 ♗c5 ♗×c5! (weaker is 17 ... b6 18 ♗×d7 ♗×d7 19 ♗e5+ or 17 ... ♗gf6 18 ♗×b7 ♖hb8 19 ♗a5 ♖b6 20 ♗e5 ♖c8 21 0-0-0, Perenyi–Lörencz, Hungary 1973, each with advantage to White) 18 dc a5 19 ♖b1 transposes into the main variation.

17 ... ♖a8–b8

Worse is 17 ... b6 18 ♗e5 ♗×e5 19 de f5 20 ♗g3 ♖d8 21 ♖a4 ♖d7 22 ♖d1 ♖×d1+ 23 ♗×d1 a5 24 ♖d4 c5 25 ♖d2 ♗f7 26 ♖d8 ♖h7, Belyavsky–Pomar, Las Palmas 1974). White was able to consolidate his advantage after 27 ♖b8!

18 ♗e4–c5 ♗d7×c5

19 d4×c5 a7–a5

A game Bellon–Pomar (Olot 1975) continued 20 ♗c5 (or 20 ♖a4 ♗f6 21 ♖×a5 ♗d7 with equal chances) 20 ... ♗f6 21 ♖d4 ♖hc8 22 ♖b3 ♖c7 23 g4 ♖d8 24 ♖×b7 ♖×d4 25 ♗×c6+ ♗c7 26 ♗×d4 ♖×b7 27 c6+ ♗c7 28 cb ♗g4 29 ♗c6 ♗×b7 30 ♗×a5+ ♗c7, and Black has equalised.

2

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♗×e4 ♜f5 5 ♗g3 ♜g6 6 h4 h6 7 ♗f3 ♗d7 8 h5 ♜h7 9 ♜d3 ♜×d3 10 ♗×d3)

10 ... ♗g8-f6

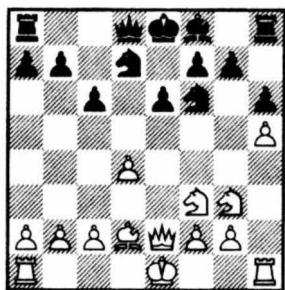
The game now branches off into 11 ♜d2 (2a) and 11 ♜f4 (2b).

2a

11 ♜c1-d2 e7-e6

12 0-0-0 ...

Another continuation is 12 ♗e2, which in a number of cases transposes into variations arising after 10 ... ♗c7 11 ♜d2 e6 12 ♗e2 (variation 1a, y). Here, we shall study independent lines only.



1) 12 ... c5 13 ♜h4 ♜e7 14 dc 0-0! 15 0-0-0 ♜c8 16 ♜b1 ♗c7 17 ♗f5 ef 18 ♗×e7 ♜fe8 19 ♗d6 ♗×c5 with equal play (Timman-Dzindzhishvili, Tilburg 1978).

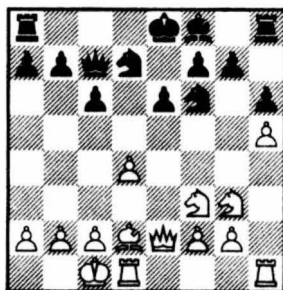
2) 12 ... ♗c7 13 c4 (13 0-0-0 leads to variations which have already been examined) 13 ... ♜d6 14 ♗f5 0-0 (not bad either is 14 ... ♜f4 15 ♜×f4 ♗×f4 16 ♗e3 c5

17 ♗d5 — 17 d5 ♗e5! — 17 ... ♗×d5 18 cd 0-0 19 de ♜fe8 20 0-0 ♜×e6 21 ♗b5 ♗c7 22 ♜ac1 a6 23 ♗b3 b6 with equal play, Tal-Portisch, Bugojno 1978) 15 ♗×d6 ♗×d6 16 0-0-0 (if 16 ♜c3 b5 17 cb cb 18 ♗×b5 ♗d5 19 ♗e5 ♗×e5 20 de ♗×c3 21 bc ♗c7 Black has excellent play, Belyavsky-Bagirov, 45th USSR Championship, 1977) 16 ... b5 17 g4 bc 18 g5 hg 19 h6 g6 20 h7+! ♗×h7 21 ♗×g5 ♗×g5 22 ♜×g5 f6 23 ♗e4 ♜f7 24 ♜h7+ ♜e8 25 ♜f4, and White has some initiative on the K-side (Mnatsakanian-Bagirov, Kirovakan 1978).

12 ... c6-c5

A sharp and quite dangerous experiment.

Better is 12 ... ♗c7 13 ♗e2 with the following typical variations emerging:



1) 13 ... c5 14 c4 (14 dc is possible) 14 ... cd 15 ♗×d4 ♜c5 16 ♗b5 ♗c6 17 ♗f5 0-0 18 ♗×h6+! gh 19 ♜×h6 ♜fd8 20 ♜h4 ♜f8 (inter-

esting is 20 ... ♗×g2) 21 ♙×f8 ♘×f8 22 ♗e5 ♚×d1+ 23 ♙×d1 ♘8d7 24 ♗g3+ ♙f8 25 h6 with sharp play and equal chances (Velikov-Bagirov, Wrocław 1976).

It should be mentioned that in a game Gaprindashvili-Chiburdanidze (1978) after 13 ... c5 the continuation 14 ♚h4 ♚c8 15 ♘f5! (interesting is 15 ♘e4) 15 ... cd 16 ♘3×d4 ♗c4 17 ♗×c4 ♚×c4 18 ♚e1 ♚c5! 19 ♘g3 ♙e7 20 ♘b3 ♚c8! 21 ♙b4 ♙×b4 22 ♚×b4 ♚c7 led to equality.

2) 13 ... ♙d6 14 ♘f5 ♙f4 15 ♙×f4 (Buljovčić-Vukić, Novi Sad 1976 went 15 ♘e3 ♘e4 16 ♙e1 ♘df6 17 g3 ♙×e3+ 18 ♗×e3 0-0-0 19 ♘e5 c5 20 f4 cd 21 ♚×d4 ♚×d4 22 ♗×d4 ♙b8 with equal play; playable was 16 ♙b4 a5 17 ♙e1) 15 ... ♗×f4+ 16 ♘e3 0-0-0 (a game Ivanović-Vukić, Yugoslavia 1978, went on 16 ... b5! 17 ♚dg1, and here 17 ... 0-0 was necessary; Black played instead 17 ... 0-0-0? 18 c4 a6 19 ♙b1 ♙b7 20 ♚c1 ♚c8 21 a4! ba 22 c5! ♘d5 23 ♚c4 ♚a8 24 ♚h4! ♗f6 25 ♚×a4 with advantage to White) 17 ♙b1 (a game Mihaljčičin-Nikolac, Vrnjačka Banja 1978, went 17 g3 ♗c7 18 ♘c4 ♚he8 18 ♘fe5 ♘b6 20 ♘a3! ♙b8; with 21 f4 White was able to retain a small advantage) 17 ... ♙b8 (or 17 ... ♚he8 18 ♚d3 ♘d5 19 ♘c4 ♗c7 20 ♚a3 ♙b8 21 g3 f6 22 ♚e1 c5 23 ♘e3! with slightly

better play for White, Ivanović-Nikolac, Yugoslavia 1978) 18 ♘c4 ♗c7 19 ♘fe5 ♘b6 20 ♘a5 ♚hf8 21 ♘b3 ♘fd7 22 ♘d3 with a clear advantage to White (Magerramov-Vdovin, USSR 1978).

It should be noted that the continuation 13 ♘e4 (instead of 13 ♗e2) does not promise much. A game van der Wiel-Portisch (Budapest 1985) continued 13 ... 0-0-0 14 ♙b1 c5! 15 ♘×f6 ♘×f6 16 ♗a3 ♙b8, and Black has at least equal prospects.

Recently the move 12 ... ♙e7 has often been played, Black playing possibly for castling K-side. In this case the following variations arise:

1) 13 ♗e2 ♚c8 (after 13 ... c5 14 ♚he1 0-0 15 ♘f5 ef 16 ♗×e7 ♘e4 17 ♗×d8 ♚f×d8 18 ♙e3 ♘df6 19 dc ♘×h5 20 ♚×d8+ ♚×d8 21 ♚d1 ♚c8 22 ♚d7 White has an advantage, Vogt-Dolezal, Budapest 1985) 14 ♘e5 c5 15 ♚he1! 0-0 16 ♘g6! ♚e8 17 ♘×e7+ ♗×e7 18 d5!, and White has the initiative (Grünfeld-Lobron, New York 1986).

2) 13 ♙b1 (if 13 ♘e4 0-0! 14 ♘×f6+ ♘×f6 15 ♙b1 c5!, the chances are even, Chandler-Lobron, Amsterdam 1983) 13 ... 0-0 14 ♗e2 ♚c8 (14 ... c5!?) 15 c4 b5 16 c5! a5? 17 ♘f1 a4 18 ♘e3, and Black needs to struggle for equality (Hort-Lobron, Biel 1984).

13 ♚h1-e1 ...

Not good on the other hand is 13 c4? cd 14 ♘×d4 (14 ♗×d4

60 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4

♙c5! 14 ... ♖c5 15 ♚e2 ♖×c4!, and Black wins a pawn.

13 ... ♙f8-e7

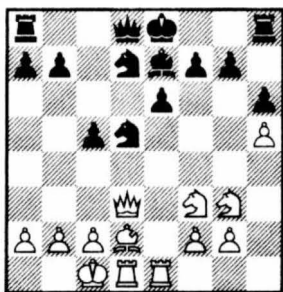
Bad is 13 ... cd? 14 ♖×e6+ fe 15 ♚g6+ ♙e7 16 ♙b4+, and White wins the game.

14 d4-d5!?

An interesting pawn sacrifice, it helps White achieve lively piece play in the centre.

14 ... ♖f6×d5

Naturally not 14 ... ed? because of 15 ♖f5!

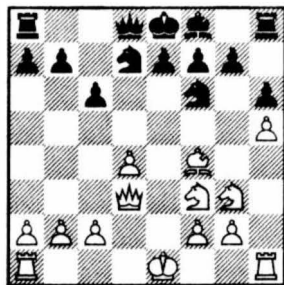


At this point White continued with 15 ♖×e6 in a game Kaválek-Hübner (Montreal 1979). After 15 ... fe 16 ♚g6+ ♙f8 17 ♚×e6 ♖c7 18 ♚f5+ ♖f6 19 ♖e5 ♚c8! 20 ♖g6+ (20 ♚d3 ♖cd5!) 20 ... ♙f7 White would have been able to obtain a decisive attack after 21 ♖e1!

2b

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♙f5 5 ♖g3 ♙g6 6 h4 h6 7 ♖f3 ♖d7 8 h5 ♙h7 9 ♙d3 ♙×d3 10 ♚×d3 ♖gf6)

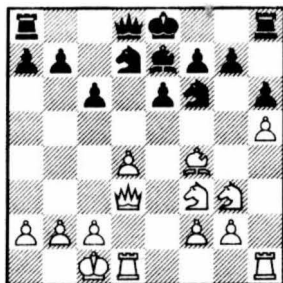
11 ♙c1-f4



White tries to take advantage of his opponent's lack of control over f4 and develops his dark-squared bishop in an active position. Now the following variations are possible:

1) 11 ... ♙a5+ 12 c3! (usually 12 ♙d2 is played, and after 12 ... ♚c7 the game transposes into the main variation; less attractive is 12 b4?! ♚×b4+ 13 c3 ♚b5 14 c4 ♚a5+ 15 ♙d2 ♚a6 16 0-0 e6 17 ♖fe1 ♙e7 18 ♖f5?! — better is 18 a4 — 18 ... ef 19 ♖×e7+ ♙×e7 20 ♙b4+ ♙d8 21 ♖e5 ♖e4!, and Black easily shakes off White's grip) 12 ... e6 13 a4 c5 14 0-0 ♖c8 (White had a slight advantage in a game Vitolinsh-Arnton, USSR 1978, after 14 ... ♙e7 15 ♖fe1 cd 16 b4 ♚a6 17 b5 ♚a5 18 ♖×d4) 15 ♖fe1 (also good is 15 ♚b5 ♚b6 16 ♖fe1 with a slight advantage) 15 ... c4 16 ♚e2, and White has some initiative (Gaprindashvili-Nikolac, Wijk aan Zee 1979).

2) 11 ... e6 12 0-0-0 ♙e7, and now:



2a) 13 c4 a5!? (worth mentioning is also 13 ... b5!?) 14 ♖b1 a4? 15 ♖e5 ♖×e5 16 ♗×e5 ♗a5? (16 ... 0-0) 17 ♖e5 0-0-0 18 c5! ♖×e4 19 ♗×e4 ♗f6 (or 19 ... ♗hg8 20 ♗h3!) 20 ♗×f6 gf 21 ♗f4, and White's position is clearly better (Karpov-Larsen, Amsterdam 1980).

2b) 13 ♖e5!? 0-0 (playable is 13 ... ♖d5 14 ♗d2 ♗g5 with approximately equal chances) 14 ♗e2 (perhaps White should play 14 c4 after which 14 ... b5?! is hardly advisable, for after 15 ♖×c6! bc 16 ♗e2 ♗e8 17 d5! Black is in serious trouble) 14 ... ♗a5 15 ♖b1 ♗ad8 16 c4 (interesting is 16 ♖g6!?) 16 ... ♖×e5 17 de ♖d7 18 ♗d2 ♗g5, and the game is even (Beljavsky-Tal, USSR 1981).

2c) 13 ♖b1 a5 (also possible is 13 ... 0-0 14 ♖e4 ♖×e4 15 ♗×e4 ♖f6 16 ♗e2 ♗d5 17 ♖e5 ♗e4 with equality, Thorsteinsson-Lobron, Reykjavik 1985) 14 ♖e4 ♖×c4 15 ♗×e4 ♖f6 16 ♗d3 (after 16 ♗e2 a4 17 ♖e5 ♗d5 18 g4 a3 19 b3 ♗e4 Black has an excellent

game, Torre-Karpov, Moscow 1981) 16 ... 0-0 17 ♖e5 ♖d5 18 ♗c1 ♗g5, and the position is even (Wedberg-Christiansen, Reykjavik 1985).

2d) 13 ♗he1 a5 14 c4 b5! 15 c5 ♖d5 16 ♗e5 0-0 17 ♖e4 ♖f7f6 18 ♖×f6+ ♖×f6 19 ♗×f6 ♗×f6 20 g4 ♗d5 21 ♖b1 ♗fd8, and here, too, Black has the better chances (Tal-Larsen, Tilburg 1980).

This completes the examination of one of the most important chapters of the Caro-Kann Defence.

B

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♗f5 5 ♖g3 ♗g6 6 h4 h6)

7 ♖g1-h3 ...

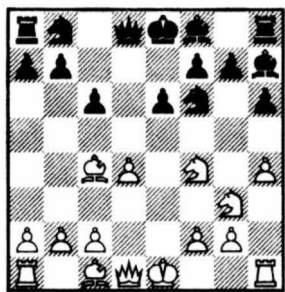
The main variation arises after 7 ♖1e2 e6 8 ♖f4. But White obtains a dangerous initiative after 7 ♖1e2 ♖d7 8 ♖f4 ♗h7 9 ♗c4 e5 10 ♖d3! ed 11 0-0 (Tal).

Against 7 ♗d3 Black does best to transpose into the main variation by 7 ... ♗×d3 8 ♗×d3 e6 9 ♖f3; White achieves a strong initiative if he accepts the sacrifice: 7 ... ♗×d4? 8 ♖f3 ♗d6 9 ♗×g6 ♗×g6 10 ♗c2 ♗d6 (or 10 ... ♖d7 11 h5 ♗d6 12 ♗h4 e6 13 ♗d4 ♗c7 14 ♗f4 ♗a5+, Marić-Sušić, Yugoslavia 1966; after 15 ♖f1! White was able to achieve an advantage) 11 0-0 e6 12 ♗d1 ♗c7 13 ♗d4 ♖f6 14 ♗f4 ♗a5 15 ♖e5.

7 ... e7-e6

Another possibility is 7 ... e5! 8 de ♗a5+ 9 c3 (playable is 9 ♖d2; a game Espig-Bönsch, GDR 1979, continued 9 ... ♗×e5+ 10 ♖e2 ♗×b2 11 0-0! ♗×c2 12 ♗e1 ♖e7 13 ♖c1! ♗a4 14 ♖f4 ♖d7 15 ♖c4! ♖f8 16 ♖×g6 ♖×g6 17 ♖f5 ♖f8 18 ♖c3 ♖f6 19 h5! ♖×h5 20 ♗e2 with advantage to White) 9 ... ♗×e5+ 10 ♖e2 ♖f6 (the initiative is also clearly on White's side after 10 ... ♖c5 11 ♖f4 ♗d5 12 ♗×d5 cd 13 0-0 ♖e7 14 ♖f3, or 10 ... ♖d7 11 ♖f4 ♗e6 12 0-0 0-0-0 13 ♗a4, etc.) 11 ♗b3 ♗c7 12 ♖f4 ♖b6 with a slight initiative to White (Kovacsy-Lepseny, correspondence game 1963).

8 ♖h3-f4 ♖g6-h7
9 ♖f1-c4 ♖g8-f6



10 0-0 ...

Other possible lines are:

1) 10 ♗e2 ♖d6 11 ♖e3 (not good is 11 ♖×e6? 0-0!; a game Keres-Olafsson, Bled 1961, went 11 c3 ♖bd7 12 ♖×e6 fe 13 ♖×e6 ♗e7 14 ♖f5 ♖×f5 15 ♖×g7+ ♖f7 16 ♖×f5 ♗×e2+ 17 ♖×e2, and

here Black was able to equalise by playing 17 ... ♖f8) 11 ... ♖bd7 12 ♖gh5 ♖×h5 13 ♖×h5 ♖g8! 14 g4 ♗c7 15 g5 ♖g6 16 0-0-0 0-0-0 with equal chances (Tal-Botvinnik, 1960).

2) 10 ♖b3 ♖d6 11 ♖fh5 ♖g8 12 ♖f4 ♖×f4 13 ♖×f4 ♖bd7 14 ♗d2 ♗c7 15 0-0-0 0-0-0, and Black has equalised (Ciocaltea-Botvinnik, 1964 Olympiad).

10 ... ♖f8-d6
11 ♖f4×e6 f7×e6
12 ♖c4×e6 ♖b8-d7!

After 12 ... ♗c7 13 ♖e1 ♖bd7 14 ♖g8+ ♖f8 15 ♖×h7 ♖×h7 16 ♖f5 the position is approximately even (Tal-Botvinnik, match 1960). But White could have obtained the advantage with 13 ♖h5! (Kondratyev).

13 ♖f1-e1 ♗d8-c7
14 ♖e6-g8+ ♖e8-f8

Black has equal play. The variation 15 ♖×h7 ♖×h7 16 ♖f5 g6! 17 ♖×h6+ ♖g8 18 ♖×d6 ♗×d6 19 ♖g5 ♖e7 20 ♗d3 ♖g7 leads to equality (Botvinnik).

II

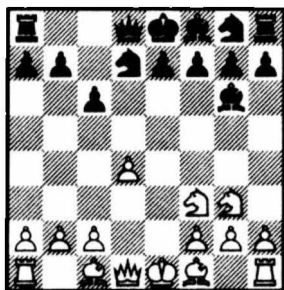
(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖f5 5 ♖g3 ♖g6)

6 ♖g1-f3 ...

Quite often this continuation transposes into the variations analysed in Section I after 6 ... ♖d7 7 h4 h6. There are, however, a considerable number of independent lines which we shall examine here:

6 ... ♖b8-d7

Also played is 6 ... ♖f6? 7 h4 ♖h5 (after 7 ... h6 8 ♖e5 ♖h7 9 ♖c4 e6 10 ♗e2 and 0-0-0 White's pressure becomes unpleasant) 8 ♖e2! ♖d7 9 g4 ♖hf6 10 h5 ♖e4 11 ♖g3 ♗a5+ 12 ♖d2 ♗d5 13 ♖g2 ♖×f3 14 ♗×f3 ♗×d4 (slightly better is 14 ... ♗×f3 15 ♖×f3, although in the ensuing end-game White has a considerable positional advantage) 15 g5 ♖d5 16 0-0-0, and Black is in for a difficult defence (Suetin-Ratner, Leningrad 1951).



After the text move 6 ... ♖d7 the following variations arise:

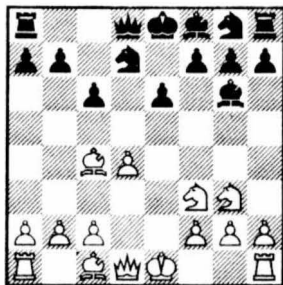
1) 7 ♖d3, and now:

1a) 7 ... e6 (not good is 7 ... ♗a5+? 8 ♖d2 ♗c7 9 ♖×g6 hg 10 ♗e2 e6 11 ♖e4 0-0-0 12 g3! c5 13 ♖f4 ♗c6? — better is 13 ... ♗a5+ — 14 0-0-0 c4 15 ♖c3! ♖h6 16 d5 ed 17 ♖×d5 ♖c5 18 ♖hd1 f6? 19 ♖d6! ♖×d6 20 ♖×d6 ♗c5 21 ♖d5, and Black resigned, Spassky-Larsen, Bugojno 1980; however, it is possible to play 7 ... ♖×d3 8 ♗×d3 e6 9 0-0

♖gf6 10 ♖e1 ♖e7 11 c4 0-0 12 ♖f4 ♖e8 13 ♖ad1 ♗b6, and White has a small advantage) 8 0-0 (a game Fuderer-Golombek, Belgrade 1952, went 8 ♖×g6 hg 9 ♗e2 ♖gf6 10 ♖d2 ♗c7 11 0-0-0 ♖d6 12 ♖b1 0-0-0 with equality) 8 ... ♖gf6 (after 8 ... ♗c7 9 c4 0-0-0? 10 ♖×g6 hg 11 ♗a4 ♖b8 12 b4 ♖h6 13 ♖e1! ♖f5 14 ♗b3 ♖e7 15 a4 ♖f8 16 ♖b2 f6 17 a5 g5 18 b5! White had a strong initiative in a game Neironov-Mandzadze, USSR 1980) 9 c4 (Black's chances for equality are good after 9 ♖e1 ♖e7 10 c4 0-0 11 ♖×g6 hg 12 ♖f4 ♖e8 13 ♗c2 c5 14 ♖ad1 cd 15 ♖×d4 ♖b4 16 ♖d2 ♖×d2 17 ♗×d2 a6, Najdorf-Kotov, Zurich 1953, or 9 b3 ♖e7 10 ♖b2 0-0 11 ♖×g6 hg 12 c4 a5 13 ♗e2 a4, Andrić-Trifunović, Yugoslavia 1951) 9 ... ♖d6 10 b3 0-0 11 ♖b2 ♗c7 12 ♖×g6 hg 13 ♗e2 ♖fe8 14 ♖e4 ♖×e4 15 ♗×e4 with a marginal space advantage for White (Spassky-Karpov, 1974).

1b) 7 ... ♖gf6 8 ♖×g6 hg 9 0-0 e6 10 c4 ♖e7 11 b3 0-0 12 ♖b2 ♗b6 13 ♖e1 ♖fe8 (13 ... c5? 14 d5!) 14 ♗c2 c5 15 a3! a5 16 dc ♖×c5 17 ♖ab1 ♖ed8 18 ♖d4 ♗c6 19 ♗e2 ♖cd7 20 ♖b2 ♖c5 21 ♖e5 ♗e8 22 b4, and White's chances are preferable (Spassky-Portisch, Montreal 1979).

2) 7 ♖c4 e6, and now:

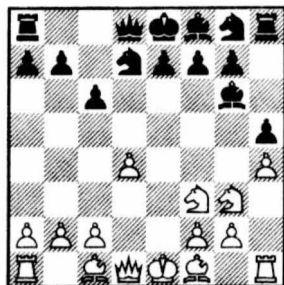


2a) 8 0-0 ♖e7(!) (a game Torre–Vukić, Biel 1977, went 8 ... ♖gf6 9 ♖b3 ♖d6? — better is 9 ... ♖e7 — 10 ♜c2 ♜c7 11 ♖e1 0-0 12 ♖e5 c5 13 ♖×g6 hg 14 ♖e3 ♖ad8 15 ♖ad1 ♖b6 16 dc ♖×c5 17 ♖×c5 ♜×c5 18 ♖e4 ♜e5? — 18 ... ♖×c4 19 ♜×e4 ♜c7 — 19 ♖×f6+ ♜×f6 20 c3 ♖×d1 21 ♖×d1 ♖d8, and here White was able to achieve a clear positional advantage after 22 ♜e4! ♖×d1+ 23 ♖×d1 ♜e7 24 ♖f3) 9 ♜e2 ♖gf6 10 ♖e1 0-0 11 c3 (playable is 11 ♖b3 and c2–c4) 11 ... ♜c7 12 ♖g5 h6 13 ♖h4 ♖ad8 14 ♖ad1 ♖fe8 15 ♖d2 (15 ♖f1) 15 ... ♖h7 16 ♖f1 ♖e4 17 ♖×e7 ♖×d2 18 ♖×d8 ♖×f3+ 19 ♜×f3 ♖×d8 with equal chances (Hübner–Portisch, Montreal 1979).

2b) 8 ♜e2 ♜c7 (more cautious is 8 ... ♖gf6 followed by 9 ... ♖e7) 9 0-0 0-0-0! (considering the present position of White's forces the long castling plan is risky for Black) 10 c3 (more energetic is 10 ♖b3 with the idea c4 and d5; after 10 ... c5 11 ♖e3 ♖gf6 12 ♖ad1 ♖g4

13 ♖g5! White has a strong initiative) 10 ... ♖gf6 11 ♖e1 ♖e7 12 a4! ♖d5 13 a5 a6 14 ♖d2 ♖he8 (worth noting is 14 ... h5) 15 b4 f6 16 ♖d3! ♖f8 17 ♖×g6 hg 18 ♖h4 g5 19 ♖g6 ♖d6 20 ♜g4 with pressure from White (Holmov–Kasparov, 1978).

3) 7 h4 h5?! (more favourable seems to be 7 ... h6 transposing into variations analysed earlier.



8 ♖d3 ♖×d3 9 ♜×d3 e6 10 ♖e4 ♜a5+ 11 ♖d2 ♜f5! 12 0-0-0 0-0-0 13 ♖e3 ♖h6 14 ♖eg5 ♜×d3 15 ♖×d3 ♖e7 16 ♖e1 ♖hf8 17 ♖h3 ♖g4 (17 ... ♖f5) 18 ♖g5 ♖fe8 19 ♖×e7 ♖×e7 20 ♖fg5 ♖df6 21 ♖d2, and White has a slight advantage in the end-game (Karpov–Larsen, Bugojno 1978). Worthy of consideration is 10 ♖d2 ♖gf6 11 0-0-0 ♜c7 12 ♖g5 instead of 10 ♖e4, and White retains lasting pressure. In Kapengut–Bykhovsky (USSR 1979) White played 8 ♖g5! After 8 ... ♜b6 9 ♖d3 ♖×d3 10 ♜×d3 ♖gf6 11 0-0-0 e6 12 ♖e5 ♖e7 13 ♖he1 ♖×e5 14 de ♖d8

15 ♜f3 ♜×d1+ 16 ♜×d1 ♖g4
17 ♖×h5 White achieved advantage.

III

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4
♜f5 5 ♖g3 ♜g6)
6 ♜f1-c4 ...

Although this move is found only rarely, it is already backed up by quite an extensive body of theory. And every chess player turning towards the Caro-Kann Defence must be aware of this. White is planning a position with ♖e2-f4 and h2-h4.

6 ... e7-e6

Quite often the move 6 ... ♖d7 is played, e. g. 7 ♖f3 (worth mentioning is 7 ♖le2, and if 7 ... e5!?, so 8 0-0 or 8 f4 with white initiative) 7 ... ♖gf6 8 0-0 e6 9 ♜e2 ♜e7 10 ♜e1 ♖d5 11 ♜b3 0-0 12 c4 (equal play results from 12 ♜d2 a5 13 a4 ♜e8 14 ♜ad1 ♜c7, Puc-Kozomara, Yugoslavia 1960) 12 ... ♖b4 13 a3 ♖d3 14 ♜d1 ♖×c1 15 ♜a×c1, and White has a minimal advantage.

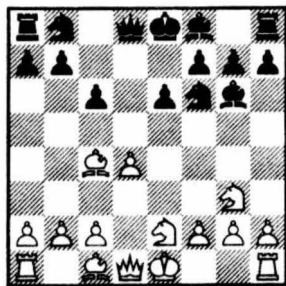
7 ♖g1-e2 ...

A game Simagin-Dubin (correspondence game 1969) went 7 ♖h3 ♖f6 8 0-0 ♜d6 9 ♜b3 ♖bd7 10 ♖f4 ♜c7 11 ♜f3 e5 12 ♖×g6 hg 13 c3 with equal play.

7 ... ♖g8-f6

Another possibility is 7 ... ♜d6. There may follow 8 h4 h6 9 ♖f4 ♜×f4 (9 ... ♜h7 10 ♖fh5! is unpleasant) 10 ♜×f4. White possesses

a strong bishop pair and chances of putting pressure on the dark squares. A game Geller-Bagirov (27th USSR Championship, 1960) continued 10 ... ♖f6 11 h5! ♜h7 12 ♜e2 ♖bd7 13 0-0-0 ♖d5 14 ♜d2 ♖7f6 15 ♜d3 ♜×d3 16 ♜×d3 ♜c7 17 ♜b1 0-0-0 18 ♜h4 ♜e7 19 c4 with a strong white initiative.



After the move in the main variation 7 ... ♖f6 the following lines are possible:

1) 8 0-0 ♜d6 (worth mentioning is 8 ... ♖bd7!?) 9 ♜b3 ♖b6 10 ♖f4 ♜d6 11 ♜e1, Westerinen-Pomar, Spain 1970, and here Black was able to equalise with 11 ... ♜c7) 9 f4 ♜d7 (in White's favour is 9 ... ♜f5 10 ♖×f5 ef as well as 9 ... ♜c7 10 f5! ef 11 ♖×f5 ♜×h2+ 12 ♜h1 0-0 13 g3! ♜×f5 14 ♜×f5 ♜×g3 15 ♜×f6! ♜e7 16 ♜f1 ♜e4+ 17 ♜f3 ♜h4+ 18 ♜g2 ♜h2+ 19 ♜f1 ♜h3+ 20 ♜g2, Keres-Golombek, 1956) 10 ♜d3 (10 f5! ef 11 ♜e3 ♖e4! leads to advantage for Black) 10 ... ♜×d3 11 ♜×d3 g6!, and Black has equal

play (van der Wiel–Seirawan, Baden 1980).

2) 8 ♗f4 ♖d6 (White has the initiative after 8 ... ♗c7 9 ♗f3 ♖d6 10 0-0 ♗bd7 11 ♖×e6!7 fe 12 ♗×e6, Westerinen–Larsen, 1971, or 8 ... ♗d5 9 ♗×g6 hg 10 ♗e4 ♗h4 11 ♗e2 ♖e7 — 11 ... ♗f6 12 ♗g5 ♗×d4 13 ♗×f7 is favourable for White — 12 ♖d2 ♗d7 13 0-0-0 ♗7f6 14 ♗g5, Boleslavsky) 9 ♖b3!7 (after 9 ♗×g6 hg 10 ♖g5 ♗bd7 11 0-0 ♗a5 or 9 0-0 ♗d5! 10 ♗gh5 0-0 11 ♖b3 ♗d7 12 ♗×g6 hg 13 ♗g3 ♗h4 14 ♗d3, which was tested in two match games, Tal–Botvinnik, 1960/61, the game is equal) 9 ... ♗c7! (after 9 ... ♗d5 10 ♗×g6 hg 11 ♗e4 White has uncomfortably active play) 10 ♗f3 ♗bd7 11 h4 (Black obtains excellent counterplay with 11 0-0 e5! 12 ♗×g6 hg 13 ♖e1 0-0-0 14 ♖×f7 ed 15 ♖×g6 ♗e5 16 ♖f5+ ♗b8 17 ♗d1 g6 18 ♖h3 ♗d5, Kotkov–Antoshin, USSR 1963) 11 ... e5 (a game Keres–Petrosian, Los Angeles 1963, went 11 ... 0-0-0 12 h5 ♖f5 13 ♗×f5 ♗a5+ 14 c3 ♗×f5 15 ♗d3 ♗×d3 16 ♗×d3 with a slight advantage to White) 12 ♗×g6 (if 12 de ♗×e5 13 ♗e2, Black seizes the initiative by 13 ... 0-0-0! 14 b5 ♗eg4! 15 hg hg 16 ♖×h8 ♖×h8) 12 ... hg 13 ♖e3 0-0-0 14 0-0-0 ed 15 ♖×d4 ♗c5. Black's chances are not worse (Boleslavsky).

Chapter 3

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♗c3 de 4 ♗×e4

4 ... ♗g8–f6

Black aims at a quick development and free play. In return he accepts a weakening of his pawn position.

5 ♗e4×f6+

In the most important and natural continuation White weakens his opponent's pawn structure on the K-side and leaves Black the choice either to let White have a Q-side pawn majority after 5 ... ef (I), or, after 5 ... gf, to content himself with a lasting although initially hardly dangerous weakness on his K-side (II). These two situations are analysed in this section.

But let us first look at a few other white continuations on the 5th move: 1) 5 ♗g3 c5 (in addition, Black has the following moves available: 5 ... ♖g4!7 6 ♖e2 ♖×e2 7 ♗1×e2 e6 8 ♗d3 ♗bd7 9 0-0 ♖e7 10 c4 0-0 11 b3 ♖e8 12 ♖b2 ♗a5· 13 ♗f3 ♖ad8 14 ♖fd1, Unzicker–Lein, South Africa 1980, and after 14 ... ♖a3! Black was able to obtain equal chances; 5 ... e5 6 ♗f3 ed 7 ♗×d4 ♖e7 8 ♗df5 ♗×d1+ 9 ♗×d1 ♖f8 10 ♖c4 ♖e6 11 ♖e1 ♗d7 12 ♖×e6+ fe 13 ♗e3 with a better end-game for White, Boleslavsky; 5 ... h5?! 6 h4 ♖g4 (a game Kupreichik–Skembris, Zenica 1985, continued 6 ... ♗c7 7 ♖c4 ♖g4 8 ♗1e2 e6 9 f3 ♖d6!) 7 ♖e2 ♖×e2 8 ♗1×e2 ♗bd7 9 ♗d3,

and White has the better play, Spielmann–Alekhine, Karlsbad 1911) 6 ♖f3 e6 (not bad either is 6 ... ♖c6 7 ♖e3 ♖d5 8 ♖e2 e6 9 0-0 ♖e7 10 ♖c1 0-0 11 dc ♖×c5 with equal chances, Tsvetkov–Sokolsky, Moscow 1947) 7 ♖d3 ♖c6 8 dc ♖×c5 9 a3 0-0 10 0-0 b6 11 b4 ♖e7 12 ♖b2 ♖b7. Black has no difficulties (Spielmann–Hönlinger, Vienna 1929).

2) 5 ♖d3 ♖×e4 6 ♖×e4 ♖d5.

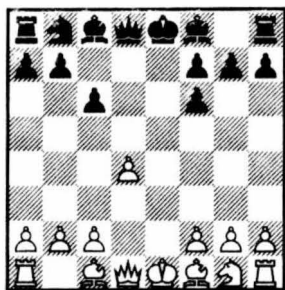
3) 5 ♖d3 ♖×e4 6 ♖×e4 ♖f5.

4) 5 ♖g5! e6 (5 ... ♖f5) 6 f4 ♖d6 7 ♖c4 0-0 8 ♖e2 ♖bd7 9 0-0 ♖b6 10 ♖b3 c5 (Ossichansky–Kirichenko, correspondence game 1968).

In all these variations Black has equal chances.

I

5 ... e7×f6



Now White has the choice between three main continuations: 6 ♖c4 (A), 6 c3 (B), and 6 ♖f3 (C).

Other possible lines include:

1) 6 g3 ♖d5 (a game Rauser–Rabin-

ovich, 5th USSR Championship, 1933, went 6 ... ♖d6 7 ♖g2 0-0 8 ♖e2 ♖f5 9 0-0 ♖e8 10 c4 ♖a6 11 ♖c3 ♖d7 12 a3 ♖h3 13 ♖e3 with white superiority; White also retains a small advantage after 6 ... ♖e6 7 ♖g2 ♖d6 8 ♖e2 0-0 9 0-0, Boleslavsky; worth considering is 6 ... c5! 7 ♖f3 ♖d6 8 ♖e3 ♖c7 9 dc ♖×c5 10 ♖×c5 ♖×c5 11 ♖e2+, Tal–Lekhtynsky, Tallinn 1979, and by playing 11 ... ♖f8 12 ♖g2 ♖c6 13 0-0 g6 or 12 0-0-0 ♖c6! Black was able to equalise) 7 ♖f3 ♖d6 (White has the better chances after 7 ... ♖g4 8 ♖g2 ♖e7 9 h3 ♖h5 10 0-0 or 7 ... ♖f5 8 c3 ♖e7 9 ♖e2, Boleslavsky; definitely playable is 7 ... ♖e7 8 ♖g2 0-0 9 0-0 ♖h5 10 c4 ♖g4 with almost equal play) 8 ♖g2 0-0 9 0-0 ♖h5 10 c4 ♖g4, and Black has sufficient counterplay.

2) 6 ♖e2! ♖d6 7 ♖f3 0-0 8 0-0 ♖e8 9 ♖e1 ♖f5 10 ♖e3 ♖d7 11 h3 ♖c4, and Black has sufficient counter-chances (Karpov–Hort, Tilburg 1979).

3) 6 ♖c3 ♖f5 7 ♖d3 ♖g6 8 ♖e2! ♖e7? (better is 8 ... ♖×d3, although White's position is still a little preferable after 9 ♖×d3 and 0-0-0) 9 ♖f3 ♖d7 10 0-0-0 ♖a5?! 11 ♖b1, and White has the better chances (Ivanović–Matulović, Belgrade 1985).

A

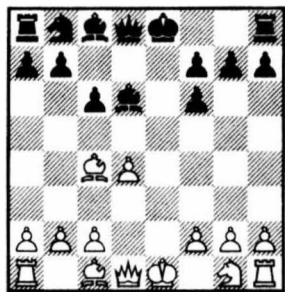
6 ♖f1–c4 ...

This active bishop manoeuvre is here the most popular continuation. From it there originate four variations which are important for the assessment of the whole system: 6 ... ♖d6 (a), 6 ... ♖e7 (b), 6 ... ♗e7 (c) and the relatively new continuation 6 ... ♖d7 (d).

Another possibility is 6 ... ♖e6 7 ♖×e6 fe 8 ♗h5+ g6 9 ♗e2 ♖f7 10 ♖f3 ♖g7 11 0-0 ♖e8 12 ♖e1 ♖d7 13 ♖e3 ♗c7 14 ♖ad1 ♖ad8 15 ♗c4, and Black is confronted with a difficult defence (Matanović–Lange, Hamburg 1965).

a

6 ... ♖f8–d6



7 ♗d1–e2+ ...

In addition to this most important move White has also the following lines available:

1) 7 ♖e2 ♗c7 (meant to delay White's castling; after 7 ... 0-0 8 0-0 ♗c7 9 ♖g3 ♖d7 10 ♖e1 c5 11 ♖f5 White has some initiative, Kaplan–Donner, San Juan 1969) 8 ♖e3 0-0 9 ♗d2 ♖e8 10 0-0-0

♖d7 11 ♖f4 ♖b6 12 ♖×d6 ♗×d6 13 ♖d3 ♖e6 with equal chances.

2) 7 ♗h5! (Keres' idea) 7 ... 0-0 8 ♖e2 ♖d7 (favourable for White is 8 ... g6 9 ♗f3 ♖e8 10 ♖h6 ♖f5 11 0-0-0!, Keres–Mikenas, Buenos Aires 1939; definitely playable is 8 ... ♖e6) 9 0-0 c5 10 dc ♖×c5 11 ♖f4 g6 12 ♗h4 ♖b6 13 ♖b3 ♖e6 14 ♖h6 ♖e8, and the position is approximately level (Gheorghiu–Donner, Hamburg 1965).

3) 7 ♗f3 0-0 8 ♖e2 ♖d7 9 0-0 ♖b6 10 ♖d3 ♖d5 11 c4 ♖e7 12 ♖f4 ♖g6 13 ♖×d6 ♗×d6 14 ♖fe1 c5 15 ♖ad1 cd 16 ♖×g6 hg 17 ♖×d4 ♗a6, and Black has equalised (Robatsch–Flohr, Amsterdam 1966).

After the move in the main variation Black is faced with the alternative of either withdrawing his bishop to e7 (1) or simplifying into a difficult end-game after 7 ... ♗e7 (2).

1

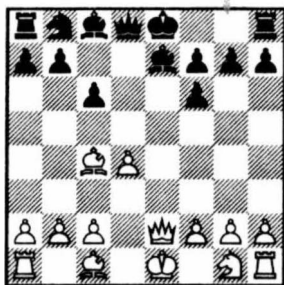
7 ... ♖d6–e7

Not good is 7 ... ♖f8!, as White has a clear advantage after 8 ♖f3, 8 ♖e3, or also 8 ♗h5.

Black avoids simplifications and develops his pieces fast. He wishes to exploit the open e-file for active counterplay.

(see diagram)

At this point the following variations can develop:



1) 8 ♖f3 0-0 (in a game Bogoljubow-Alekhine, Munich 1942, White had the better chances after 8 ... ♗g4! 9 c3 ♘d7 10 h3 ♙h5 11 g4 ♙g6 12 ♘h4 ♘b6 13 ♙b3 ♘d5 14 ♙d2) 9 0-0 (this continuation usually leads to positions of the system with 2 ♖f3 d5 3 ♘c3 de 4 ♘×e4 ♘f6) 9 ... ♗g4 10 c3 (the pawn sacrifice 10 ♖e1? ♙×f3 11 ♙×f3 ♙d4 does not promise White any tangible advantage) 10 ... ♘d7 11 ♖e1 ♙d6 12 h3 ♙h5 13 ♙d3 ♘b6 14 ♙d2 ♙d7 15 ♙e4 ♙g6 16 ♙e2 ♙h5 17 ♙e4 ♙g6 with equal chances (Andersson-Rytov, Tallinn 1973).

2) 8 ♙h5! 0-0 9 ♘e2 c5 (also possible is 9 ... g6 10 ♙h6 ♙f5! 11 ♙b3 c5 12 ♙e3 ♘c6 13 0-0-0 c4! 14 ♙×c4 ♘b4 15 ♙b3 ♖c8 with good black counterplay, Mnat-sakanian-Simagin, Kiev 1965) 10 ♙e3 ♙a5+ 11 ♙d2 ♙c7 12 ♙f4 ♙a5+ 13 c3 g6 14 ♙h4 cd 15 ♘×d4 ♙c5, and the chances are even (Matulović-Kurajica, Skopje 1969).

3) 8 ♙d3 0-0 9 ♘e2 ♙d6 10 0-0

♙c7 11 g3 b5 12 ♙b3 c5 13 ♙d5 ♘c6 14 dc ♙×c5 15 ♙×b5 ♘b4 16 ♙×a8 ♙a6 with sharp play in which the chances are approximately level (Boleslavsky).

2

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 de 4 ♘×e4 ♘f6 5 ♘×f6+ ef 6 ♙c4 ♙d6 7 ♙e2+)

7 ... ♙d8-e7

There now develops a difficult end-game with White's static advantages emerging more clearly. There is, nevertheless, a long way to go before the advantage of the pawn majority on the Q-side can be realised, if indeed this can be done at all. But White's chances are better by far.

8 ♙e2×e7+ ♙e8×e7

9 ♘g1-e2 ♙c8-e6

After 9 ... ♖e8 10 0-0 (not bad either is 10 ♙f4) 10 ... ♙f5 11 c3 a5 (11 ... ♙f8 12 ♙f4!) 12 ♘g3 ♙g6 13 f4 b5 14 ♙e2 h6 15 f5 ♙h7 16 ♘e4 White has clearly the better chances.

10 ♙c4-d3 ...

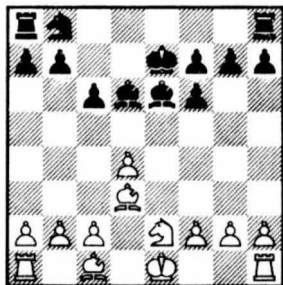
This is more flexible than 10 ♙b3! ♘d7 11 0-0 ♖he8 12 ♖e1 (Kurajica-Holmov, Skopje 1969). After 12 ... ♙d8! Black had a slightly worse but nevertheless sufficiently solid position.

(see diagram)

10 ... ♘b8-d7

Other possibilities are:

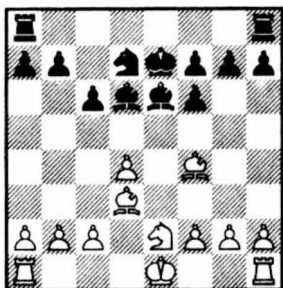
1) 10 ... ♖d8 11 0-0 a5 12 ♖e1 ♘a6 13 a3 h6 14 ♙d2 ♘c7



15 ♖f4 (15 c4!?) 15 ... ♗×f4
16 ♗×f4 ♖b5 with a small advantage to White (Matanović–Bronstein, Portorož 1958).

2) 10 ... c5 11 ♗e3 c4 12 ♗e4 ♖d7 13 0-0 ♖ab8 14 ♖he1 ♖b6 15 ♖c3 ♗d7 16 ♗f3, and White exerts strong pressure (Klovan–A. Zaitsev, USSR 1969).

11 ♗c1–f4



Now there may follow:

1) 11 ... ♖he8! 12 0-0-0 f5 13 ♖he1 ♖f6 14 ♗×d6+ ♗×d6 15 ♖f4 ♗d7 16 ♗c4 ♖e4 with equality (Klovan–Holmov, USSR 1966).

2) 11 ... ♖b6 12 ♗×d6+ ♗×d6 13 b3 ♗c7 14 c4 ♖ad8 15 ♗d2 ♖he8 16 ♖ae1 ♖c8 17 ♗c3, and

White retains a small advantage (Matulović–Smyslov, 1970 Olympiad).

b

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖f6 5 ♗×f6+ ef 6 ♗c4)

6 ... ♗f8–e7

7 ♖g1–e2 ...

7 ♖f3 0-0 8 0-0 leads to variations analysed previously.

7 ... 0-0

8 0-0 ♖b8–d7

The following lines are now possible:

1) 9 ♖e1 c5 10 c3 cd 11 cd ♗b4 12 ♖c3 ♖b6 13 ♗b3 ♗f5 14 d5, and White has a minimal advantage (Stein–Bronstein, Amsterdam 1964).

2) 9 ♗b3 ♖e8 10 ♖f4 ♖f8 11 ♖e1 ♖d6 12 ♖×e8 ♗×e8 13 ♗e3 ♗e4 14 ♗d2 ♖g6 15 f3 ♗f5 16 ♖×g6 hg 17 c4, and White's chances are slightly better (Trifunović).

It should be noted that after 9 ♗f4 ♖e8 10 ♗d2 Black needs to fight a long battle for equality.

c

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖f6 5 ♗×f6+ ef 6 ♗c4)

6 ... ♗d8–e7+

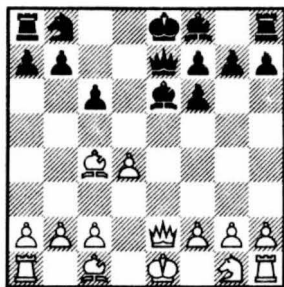
7 ♗d1–e2 ...

A game Vogt–Möhrling (GDR 1973) went 7 ♗e2! ♗c7 (7 ... ♗g4!?) 8 ♖f3 ♗d6 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♗e3 ♖d7 11 c4 ♖e8 12 ♗c2

♖f8 13 h3, and White has a small advantage.

7 ... ♘c8-e6

This is the most frequently used continuation. But 7 ... ♘g4 is also possible, e. g. 8 ♗×e7+ ♘×e7 9 ♘f4 0-0 10 f3 ♘f5 11 0-0-0 ♖d7 12 ♖e2 ♖b6 13 ♘b3 ♗fd8 14 g4 ♘g6 15 ♘g3 f5 with equality (Nokso-Koivisto-Lipsanen, Finland 1980).



The main continuation 7 ... ♘e6 may be followed by:

1) 8 ♘×e6 ♗×e6 9 ♘f4 (Mata-nović-Wade, Skopje 1972, went 9 ♖h3 g5 10 f4 g4 11 ♖f2 f5 12 h3 g3 13 ♖d3 ♖d7 14 b3 0-0-0 15 ♗×e6 fe 16 ♘b2 with roughly equal play) 9 ... ♖a6 10 c3 0-0-0 11 ♗×e6+ fe 12 ♖e2 c5 13 ♘e3 ♘d6 14 0-0-0 ♗he8 15 ♖c2 ♘f8 16 ♗he1 b6 with equal chances (Ga-prindashvili-Andersson, Dortmund 1978).

2) 8 ♘d3 c5! (also possible is 8 ... ♗c7 9 ♗f3 ♘d6 10 ♖e2 0-0 11 ♖g3 ♗e8 12 0-0 ♖d7 13 ♘d2 ♘d5! with approximate equality) 9 dc ♗×c5 10 ♖f3 ♖c6 11 0-0

♘d6 12 h3 0-0 13 ♘e3 ♗a5 14 ♘d2 ♗h5 15 ♖d4 ♗×e2 16 ♖×e2 ♖e5, and Black has excellent play (Jovčić-Andersson, Titovo Užice 1978).

3) 8 ♘b3 ♖a6!? (after 8 ... ♖d7 9 ♘f4 ♖b6 10 0-0-0 ♖d5 11 ♘d2 0-0-0 12 c4 ♖c7 13 ♘f4 ♘f5! Black has equal chances, Kostrov-Dünhaupt, correspondence game 1978/80; after 8 ... ♘×b3 9 ab ♗×e2+ 10 ♖×e2 ♘d6 11 ♘f4 ♘×f4 12 ♖×f4, Kuijpers-Lekhtynsky, 1974 Olympiad, White has a slight advantage) 9 ♘e3 ♘×b3 10 ab ♗e6 11 ♖f3 ♘d6 12 0-0 0-0 13 ♗fd1 ♗fe8 14 ♗d2 ♖b4 with equal chances (Sznapić-Lekhtynsky, Dečín 1979).

d

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖f6 5 ♖×f6+ ef 6 ♘c4)

6 ... ♖b8-d7

A relatively new continuation. Black is in no hurry to develop his f8-bishop, and he waits for White to move his king's knight to either f3 or e2.

7 ♖g1-e2 ...

A good way to reply to 7 ♖f3 is 7 ... ♖b6 followed by 8 ... ♘g4.

Worth considering is 7 ♗h5! g6 8 ♗e2+.

7 ... ♘f8-d6

A game Spassky-Pomar (Munich 1979) went 7 ... ♖b6? 8 ♘b3 ♘d6 9 c4! ♘c7 10 ♘f4 0-0 11 ♘×c7 ♗×c7 12 c5! ♖d7

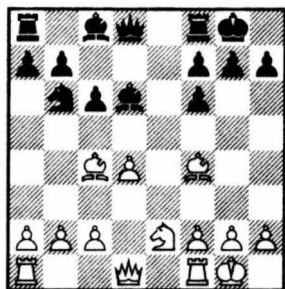
72 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♗×e4

13 0-0 b6 14 cb ab 15 ♖e1 ♗b7
(better is 15 ... ♗d6) 16 ♗g3
♖fe8? 17 ♗×f7+! ♗×f7
18 ♗h5+ g6 (18 ... ♗f8 19 ♗×h7
and 20 ♗f5 or 20 ♗h5, and White
obtains a strong attack) 19 ♗×h7+
♗f8 20 h4!, and the threat h4-h5 is
very strong.

8 0-0 0-0

After 8 ... ♗c7 9 ♗g3 0-0
10 ♗h5! ♗b6 11 ♗d3 g6 12 ♗h4
the white initiative is very dangerous
(Barczay-Ćirić, Warsaw 1979).

9 ♗c1-f4 ♗d7-b6



10 ♗c4-d3 ...

Another continuation is 10 ♗b3
♗e6! (in a game Liberson-Korchnoi,
Lone Pine 1979, White had a
small but lasting advantage after
10 ... ♗g4 11 f3 ♗×f4 12 ♗×f4
♗f5 13 c3 ♗c7 14 ♗d3 ♖ad8
15 ♖e1) 11 ♗d3 (or 11 ♗×e6 fe
12 c3 ♖e8 with equal chances)
11 ... ♗×b3 12 ab ♗×f4
13 ♗×f4 ♗d6 14 ♗e2 c5, and
White has a slight advantage.

10 ... ♗c8-e6

11 c2-c3 ♗b6-d5

12 ♗f4×d6 ♗d8×d6

13 ♗d1-d2 ♖a8-d8

14 ♖f1-e1

A game Karpov-Korchnoi (match
1978) continued 14 ... g6 15 ♖ad1
♗g7 16 ♗e4 ♗c7 17 b3 ♖fe8
18 ♗b1 (18 ♗f3 h5! 19 h3 ♗c8
followed by ♗c7 — e6-g5 gives
Black good counterplay on the
K-side) 18 ... ♗g4 19 h3 (after
19 f3 ♗c8 20 c4 ♖e7! Black has a
solid position) 19 ... ♗×e2
20 ♖×e2 ♖×e2 21 ♗×e2 ♗d5
22 ♗d2. With 22 ... f5 Black was
here able to obtain approximate
equilibrium.

B

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♗c3 de 4 ♗×e4
♗f6 5 ♗×f6+ ef)

6 c2-c3 ...

This continuation has quite a long
history. By placing his forces accord-
ing to the plan ♗d3, ♗c2 and ♗e2
White's plan is to castle long and to
attack on the K-side. This idea has re-
cently become more and more fash-
ionable, and practice shows that
Black has quite a difficult defence in
store.

6 ... ♗f8-d6

After 6 ... ♗e6 7 ♗f3 ♗d6
8 ♗d3 ♗d7 9 ♗c2 ♗c7 10 ♗e3
c5 11 dc ♗×c5 12 ♗b5+ ♗d7
13 ♗×d7+ ♗×d7 14 ♖d1 White
has the better chances (Minić-Ko-
vačević, Belgrade 1978).

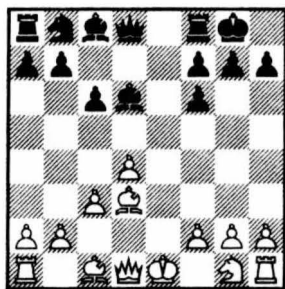
In a game Ivanović-Matulović
(Belgrade 1985) play was equal after
6 ... ♗f5 7 ♗f3 ♗d6 8 ♗d3

♙×d3 9 ♜×d3 0-0 10 ♙e3 ♘d7
11 0-0-0 ♜c7 12 g3 ♞ad8.
7 ♙f1-d3 0-0

In addition to this development move Black has the following lines available:

1) 7 ... c5! 8 ♘e2 ♘c6 9 ♙e3 ♜e7 10 dc ♙×c5 11 ♙×c5 ♜×c5 12 ♜c2 ♙e6 13 0-0 with a minimal advantage to White (Gurgenidze-Holmov, 34th USSR Championship, 1967).

2) 7 ... ♜c7 8 ♘e2 ♙g4?! 9 ♙e3 ♘d7 10 ♜d2 ♙×e2 11 ♜×e2 0-0-0 12 0-0-0 ♙b8 13 ♙b1 ♘b6 14 g3 ♙a8?! 15 ♜f3, and White has a positional advantage (Karpov-Smyslov, Tilburg 1979).



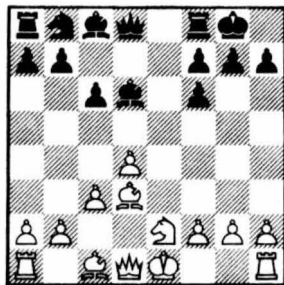
8 ♜d1-c2 ...

An alternative here is 8 ♘e2, which usually transposes into the main variation.

(see diagram)

Let us look at some independent variations for this continuation:

1) 8 ... ♘d7 9 ♜c2 (after 9 0-0 ♞e8 10 ♘g3 ♘f8 Black has no difficulties) 9 ... h6 10 ♙f4 ♙×f4



11 ♙×f4 c5 12 0-0-0 ♜a5 13 ♙b1 ♘b6 14 d5!, and White has strong pressure (Hort-Pfleger, London 1979).

2) 8 ... ♜c7?! 9 ♜c2 g6 10 h4 ♙e6 11 h5 f5 12 ♙h6 ♞e8 13 0-0-0 ♘d7 14 hg fg 15 g4!, after which Black's position is bad (Suetin-Andersson, Sochi 1973).

Sometimes 8 ♜h5! is played. After 8 ... g6 9 ♜h4 c5 (a game Medina-Donner, Beverwijk 1965, went 9 ... ♘d7 10 ♘e2 c5 11 0-0 ♜b6, 12 ♙c4 cd 13 cd f5 14 ♘c3 ♜b4 15 ♙b3 ♙e7 16 ♙g5 with a clear white advantage) 10 ♘e2 ♘c6 11 ♙h6 ♞e8 12 dc ♙×c5 the chances are almost equal (Filip).

8 ... ♞f8-e8+

Nimzowitsch recommended 8 ... ♙h8 with the continuation 9 ♘e2 ♜c7 10 ♙e3 ♙e6 11 0-0-0 b5, and Black aims at getting counterplay on the Q-side.

9 ♘g1-e2 ...

Here Black has the choice between two continuations: 9 ... g6 (a) and 9 ... h6 (b).

a

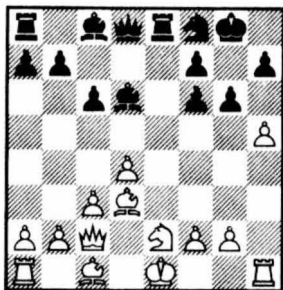
9 ... g7-g6

Until recently this was regarded as the main continuation. Currently the reputation of the move has been somewhat undermined, as interesting ways have been found for White to achieve the initiative.

10 h2-h4 ♖b8-d7

Little analysis has been done on the sharp 10 ... c5! 11 h5 f5 12 hg hg 13 ♖e3 (13 g4 f4! 14 ♖×g6 ♗f6 15 ♖h7+ ♕f8 with unclear play, Marić) 13 ... f4 14 ♖×g6 (Selevinsky-Goldberg, USSR 1961). Here it was indispensable for Black to play 14 ... ♗f6, and the game is unclear, although White's chances are better.

11 h4-h5 ♖d7-f8



12 ♖c1-h6! ...

One of Kaválek's ideas. This is the variation Black has most difficulties with. A game Suetin-Augustin (Sochi 1979) went 12 hg fg 13 ♖d2 (13 ♗b3+ ♖e6 14 ♗×b7 ♖d5 15 ♕f1 a6, and the white queen is unable to escape and there follows

repetition of position, Szabó-Flohr, Groningen 1946) 13 ... ♗c7 14 0-0-0 ♖e6 15 ♕b1 b5 16 ♖de1 ♗f7 17 ♖c1 ♖ab8 18 ♖h4 ♖d5 19 f3 ♖×e1 20 ♖×e1 f5 with roughly equal play.

Worth noting is the continuation 13 ♕f1 (instead of 13 ♖d2 or 13 ♗b3+) 13 ... ♖e6 14 ♖h6 ♗e7 15 ♖e1 ♗f7 16 b3 ♗c7 17 c4 ♗d7 18 ♖c3 ♖b4 19 ♖h4 ♖f5! 20 ♖×e8 (or 20 ♖×f5 ♖×e1+ 21 ♕×e1 ♗×f5 22 ♗×f5 gf with a good endgame for Black) 20 ... ♖×e8 21 ♖e3 ♖×d3+ 22 ♗×d3 ♖×c3 23 ♗×c3 ♗f5 with approximate equality (Gurgenidze-Möhring, Halle 1978).

12 ... ♗d8-c7!

Probably better is 12 ... ♗e7 13 0-0-0 ♖f5! 14 ♖×f5 ♗×e2 or 14 ♖×f8 ♖×d3 15 ♗×d3 ♖×f8 with chances to achieve equality (Keene).

13 0-0-0 ♖c8-e6

Worth noting is 13 ... b5.

14 c3-c4!

White's position is better and the following examples are typical:

1) 14 ... ♖ad8? 15 hg fg 16 c5! ♖e7 17 ♖f4 ♖f7 18 ♖c4!, and the white attack breaks through (Kaválek-Andersson, Washington 1978).

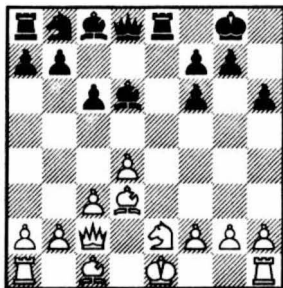
2) 14 ... c5 15 d5 ♖c8 (also after 15 ... ♖d7 16 hg hg 17 ♖h4! Black has considerable difficulties) 16 hg fg 17 ♖h4 f5 18 ♖dh1 ♗f7 19 ♖f4 ♖d7 20 ♖h3, and here too

Black is faced with almost insurmountable problems (Sznapik-Kostro, Poland 1980).

b

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖f6 5 ♖×f6+ ef 6 c3 ♖d6 7 ♖d3 0-0 8 ♖c2 ♖e8+ 9 ♖e2)
9 ... h7-h6

By far less research has been done on this continuation than on 9 ... g6; but it definitely deserves consideration.



10 ♖c1-e3 ...

A game Vogt-Lekhtynsky (Halle 1981) continued 10 0-0 ♖d7 11 ♖f4 ♖f8 12 ♖×d6 ♖×d6 13 ♖fe1 ♖e6 14 ♖g3 ♖ad8 15 ♖e3 ♖d5 and Black gradually equalised.

10 ... ♖b8-d7

In a game Asztalos-Nimzowitsch, Bled 1931, Black had level play after 10 ... ♖c7 11 ♖d2 ♖d7 12 ♖g3 ♖f4! 13 0-0 ♖×e3 14 fe ♖f8 15 ♖f2 ♖e7 16 c4 ♖e6 17 a3 c5.

11 0-0-0 ♖d8-c7

12 ♖c1-b1 b7-b5

13 h2-h3 ♖d7-b6

A game Suetin-Krutyansky (Moscow 1958) went on 14 ♖c1 ♖e6 15 ♖hg1 ♖c7 16 g4 ♖d6 with roughly equal play.

c

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖f6 5 ♖×f6+ ef)
6 ♖g1-f3 ...

This continuation often means nothing but transposition. Here we shall deal only with the lines particular to this continuation.

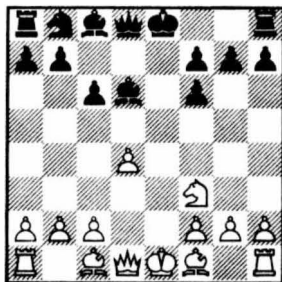
6 ... ♖f8-d6

Interesting is 6 ... ♖a6! 7 ♖e2 ♖d6 8 0-0 ♖c7 9 c4 0-0 10 ♖e3 ♖e8 11 ♖d2 ♖f5 12 ♖ad1 ♖e4 with equal chances (Wedberg-Lekhtynsky, 1980 Olympiad). A game Mikhailshishin-Durić (USSR-Yugoslavia 1977) went 6 ... ♖e6 7 ♖d3 (also good is 7 ♖e2 followed by 0-0 and c2-c4) 7 ... ♖a6 8 c3 ♖c7 9 0-0 b5? (better is 9 ... ♖d6) 10 ♖e1 ♖d6 11 ♖c2 ♖f8 12 ♖h4 ♖d7 13 ♖f5 h5 14 a4! b4 15 ♖×d6 b3 16 ♖e2 (even stronger is 16 ♖d2) 16 ... ♖×d6 17 ♖f3 ♖d7 18 ♖e4 with White applying strong pressure in the centre.

(see diagram)

The move in the main variation 6 ... ♖d6 can continue along the following lines:

1) 7 ♖e2 ♖a6! 8 0-0 ♖c7 9 c4 0-0 10 ♖e3 ♖e8 11 ♖d2 ♖f5 12 ♖ad1 ♖e4 13 ♖c1 h6 14 ♖d2 ♖h7 15 ♖f3 (15 ♖f3) 15 ... f5!



16 ♖b3 g5! with equal play for Black (Torre-Korchnoi, 1978 Olympiad).

2) 7 ♖d3 0-0 8 0-0 ♖g4 9 ♖e3 ♖d7 10 c4 c5 11 ♖c2 ♗c7 12 h3 ♖h5, and Black has no worries (Kuijpers-Flohr, Amsterdam 1963).

3) 7 ♖c4 0-0 8 0-0 ♖g4 9 c3 ♖d7 10 h3 ♖h5 11 ♖e2 ♖e8 12 ♖e1 ♖c7 13 ♖h4 ♗e7 14 ♖e3 ♖×e2 15 ♗×e2 g6 16 ♗d2 ♖b6 17 ♗d3 f5 18 ♖f3 ♗e4! 19 ♖ad1 ♗×d3 20 ♖×d3 f6 21 b3 ♖d5 22 ♖d2 a5 23 a3 ♖×e1+ 24 ♖×e1 a4, and the end-game is more in Black's favour (Bikhanan-Lein, USA 1978).

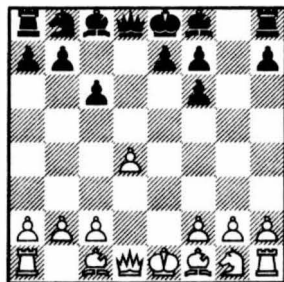
11

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖f6 5 ♖×f6+)

5 ... g7×f6

(see diagram)

Not an easy system for Black, especially in the given situation in which the white knight is still on g1 and, depending on how the game proceeds, can be developed to f3 or e2 and then to g3. The positional



structure of the black pawns shows clearly that Black must aim for an active counterplay on the K-side by using the semi-open g-file. On the other hand, it is the K-side where a tangible weakness can be found in the Black camp. Often double-edged play develops which, as a rule, offers White the more favourable chances. White has now several possible continuations, the most important being 6 c3 (A), 6 ♖e2 (B), 6 ♖f3 (C) and 6 ♖e2 (D).

But let us first look at some other possibilities:

1) 6 g3 ♗d5! 7 ♖f3 ♖f5 (in a correspondence game Simagin-Jansen, 1968, White had the advantage after 7 ... ♖g4?! 8 ♖g2 ♖d7 9 0-0 e5 10 h3! ♖×f3 11 ♖×f3 ♗×d4 12 ♗e2 ♖b6 13 ♖e4) 8 c3 (after 8 c4 ♗e4+ 9 ♗e2 ♖a6 10 a3 0-0-0 11 ♖g2 e5 12 ♗×e4 ♖×e4 13 de, Lilienthal-Tolush, 14th USSR Championship, 1945, Black had the slightly better chances after playing 13 ... fe1) 8 ... ♖d7 9 ♖g2 ♗c4 10 ♖e3 ♖b6 11 ♖d2

♙a6 12 ♘f1 ♙a5 13 ♚e2 ♘d5 with equal chances (Fletscher–Gligorič, Venice 1949).

2) 6 ♚c4 ♚f5 (hardly recommendable is 6 ... h5?) 7 ♚d3 ♚d6 8 ♘e2 ♚e6 9 ♚b3 ♘a6 10 0-0 ♘b4 11 ♚c3! and White has the advantage, Miles–Hort, London 1983) 7 ♘e2 (or 7 c3 e6 8 ♙f3 ♘d7 9 ♘e2 h5 10 ♘f4 h4 11 ♚e3 ♙c7 with equal play for Black, Ivanovich–Bronstein, Tallinn 1979) 7 ... e6 8 ♘g3 (after 8 0-0 ♚d6! 9 ♘g3 ♚g6 10 f4 f5, or 9 ♚e1 ♙c7! Black has equal play, Larsen) 8 ... ♚g6 9 h4 (if 9 f4 f5 or 9 0-0 ♚d6, the game is even) 9 ... h5 10 ♚f4 ♚d6 11 ♙d2 ♙c7 12 ♚xd6 ♙xd6 13 0-0-0 ♘d7 14 ♚he1 0-0-0, and the position is level (Larsen).

3) 6 ♚f4 ♚f5 (worth mentioning is 6 ... ♙b6!?) 7 ♘f3! ♙xb2 8 ♚d3 with double-edged play, Poulsen–Larsen, Copenhagen 1973) 7 ♚c4 e6 8 ♘f3 (also possible is 8 ♙d2, e. g. 8 ... ♚d6 9 ♘e2 ♙c7 10 0-0-0 h5 11 ♚he1 ♘d7 with equal play) 8 ... ♚g8 9 0-0 ♚d6 10 ♚xd6 ♙xd6 11 ♘h4 ♚g6 12 f4 f5! 13 c3 ♘d7 14 ♙e2 (after 14 a4?! 0-0-0 15 a5 ♘f6 16 a6 b6 17 ♙b3 ♘h5 18 g3 c5! Black has slightly the better chances, Sokolsky–Konstantinopolsky, 18th USSR Championship, 1950) 14 ... 0-0-0, and Black has good counterplay (Larsen).

4) 6 ♙d3 ♘d7 (also not bad is 6 ... ♘a6 7 ♚d2 ♘c7 8 ♘f3 ♚g4

9 ♚e2 ♙d7 10 ♙b3 ♘b5 11 c3 ♘d6 12 0-0-0 0-0-0 with equality) 7 ♘e2 ♘b6 8 ♘f4 (or 8 ♘g3 h5! 9 h4 ♚g4 10 ♚d2 ♙c7, and the game is even) 8 ... e5 9 de fe 10 ♙e4 ♙e7 11 ♘d3 ♚g7 12 ♚d2 ♚e6 13 ♚b4 ♙g5 14 h4 ♙f5 15 ♘c5 ♙xe4 16 ♘xe4 0-0-0 with equal chances Marić–Sušić, Vrnjačka Banja 1966).

5) 6 ♚e3 ♚f5 7 ♘e2 (a game Romanovsky–Levenfish, 1st USSR Championship, 1920, went instead 7 ♚d3 ♚g6 8 ♘e2 ♘a6 9 ♙d2, and here Black was able to equalise with 9 ... ♘c7 10 0-0-0 ♘d5) 7 ... ♘d7 8 ♙d2 ♘b6 (after 8 ... e6 9 ♘g3 ♚g6 10 ♚e2 ♙c7, Bakulin–Bronstein, 32nd USSR Championship, 1965, roughly equal play resulted after 11 0-0-0 0-0-0) 9 ♘g3 ♚g6 10 c4 h5 11 h4 e6 12 ♚e2 ♚d6 13 0-0 ♚e7 14 ♚ac1 f5 15 ♚g5 e5 with roughly equal chances (Mata-nović–Bronstein, Hastings 1953/54).

A

6 c2–c3 ♚c8–f5

This is rightfully regarded as Black's main weapon.

The following variations are also playable:

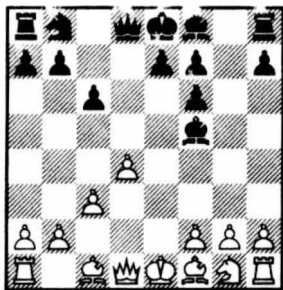
1) 6 ... ♙c7 (hardly any research has been done on 6 ... b6!?, Vorotnikov) 7 ♚c4 e6 8 ♙h5! c5 9 d5 e5 10 ♘e2 ♚d6 11 f4, and White has the initiative (Kaplan–Rossolimo, Puerto Rico 1967).

2) 6 ... e6 7 ♘e2 ♘d7 8 ♘g3

5 b6 9 d3 c5 10 0-0 h5
11 e4 c8 12 e×h5 f5 13 d3
d6 14 g3, and White has a clear
positional advantage (Bernstein-
Flohr, Groningen 1946).

3) 6 ... e5 7 d4 ed 8 c3 c7+
9 e2 b5 10 d3 e6 11 c2,
and Black is in serious trouble (Nim-
zowitsch).

4) 6 ... c5 7 e3 d5 8 e2
followed by 0-0 and c3-c4, and
White exerts lasting pressure in the
centre.



7 e3-g1-e2 ...

This flexible move is White's main
continuation. But he also has several
other possibilities:

1) 7 d4 e6 8 e2 h5 (also good is
8 ... e7 9 e3 d6 10 0-0 c7
11 f4 f5! with equality) 9 e3 d6
(9 ... d4!) 10 c2 (or 10 h4
d6 11 e2 c5 12 b4 c7
13 e×h5 e7 followed by 0-0-0
and a5 with roughly equal play)
10 ... e7 11 f4 f5 12 e1 (also
playable is 12 0-0! and then e3,
e3-h1-f2-d3-e5) 12 ... h4
13 e2 e6 14 e3 d5 15 d2
d6 16 0-0 c7 17 c1 e×f3

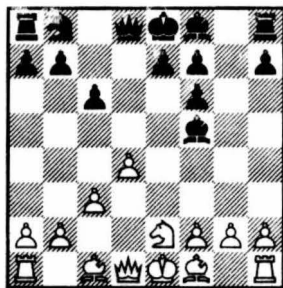
18 e×f3 0-0-0 with approximate
equality (Larsen).

2) 7 d3 d6 8 h4 c5 9 e×g6
hg 10 c3 d7 11 e3 e7
12 c×d5 cd, and Black's chances
are more favourable (Nedeljković-
Bronstein, USSR-Yugoslavia 1957).

3) 7 c3 c7 8 d4 e6 9 e3
e7 with equal chances.

4) 7 e3 e7 (worth considering is
7 ... c7!) 8 g3 e6 9 d2 e7
10 0-0 d4 11 e1 h5! 12 d4
d6 13 e×d6 c×d6 with roughly
equal chances, Seitaj-Skembris, Ko-
wala 1985) 8 d4 c6! 9 d3!
e×d3 10 c×d3 c×b2 11 0-0
c3! 12 e1 b1 e6 13 d7 d6
14 e×b6 ab 15 e×b6 with posi-
tional advantage for White (Karpov-
Miles, Oslo 1984).

Worth consideration is also the
little tested 7 d4! c6!



7 ... h7-h5

A double-edged but consistent de-
cision. Other possible lines for Black
are:

1) 7 ... e7 8 e3 d6 9 h4 h6
(or 9 ... h5 10 e2 c5 11 b4

♙c7 12 ♖×h5 e5! — ♜12 ... a5
13 ♖f4! — 13 ♖g3 0-0-0 14 h5
♙h7 15 ♙b3 ♖b6 with double-
edged play, Peters–Seirawan, USA
1984) 10 h5 ♙h7 11 ♙d3 ♙×d3
12 ♙×d3 ♙c7 13 ♙f3 e6 14 ♙f4
♙a5 15 0-0 ♙d5 16 ♙e2 ♙d6
17 ♙×d6 ♙×d6 18 ♖ad1 0-0-0
19 c4 ♙b8 20 ♖e4 ♙c7 21 d5!,
and Black's position is rather difficult
(Adorjan–Hübner, match 1980).

2) 7 ... ♙g4! 8 f3 ♙f5 9 ♙g3
♙g6 10 f4 f5, and the game is
roughly equal (Liberson–Hort, Mos-
cow 1963).

3) 7 ... e6 8 ♖g3 ♙g6 9 h4 h5
10 ♙e2 ♙a5 with chances for both
sides (Petrushin–Dorfman, USSR
1980).

8 ♖e2–g3 ...

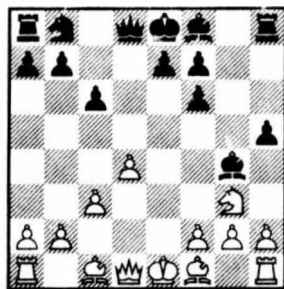
In addition to this manoeuvre,
which is currently regarded as the
best continuation, the following lines
are possible:

1) 8 h4 ♖d7 9 ♖g3 ♙g4 10 ♙e2
♙×e2 11 ♙×e2 ♙a5 12 0-0-0-0-0
13 c4 e6 14 a3 (a game Gudmund-
son–Bronstein, Reykjavik 1974,
went 14 ♙f4 ♖b6 15 ♖fd1 ♙h6
16 ♙×h6 ♖×h6 17 ♖e4 ♖g6
18 b4 ♙f5 19 ♖g3 ♙g4 with
slightly better play for Black) 14 ...
♙d6 (also interesting is 14 ...
♙c7! 15 c5 ♙e7 followed by
♖dg8 and ♖g4 with chances for
both sides) 15 ♖e4 ♙b8 16 c5 f5
17 b4 ♙a6 18 ♖c3 ♙×e2
19 ♖×e2 (Averbakh–Sokolsky, 18th
USSR Championship, 1950). Here

Black was able to obtain equal play
after 19 ... ♖dg8 20 ♙g5 ♖g6.

2) 8 ♖f4! h4 9 ♙f3 (9 ♙d3!?)
9 ... ♖d7 10 g4 hg 11 fg e5 12 g4
♙h7 13 ♖e2 ed 14 cd ♙b4+
15 ♙f2 ♙e7, and Black obtained the
initiative (Bilek–Bronstein, Budapest
1955).

8 ... ♙f5–g4



9 f2–f3 ...

After 9 ♙e2 ♙×e2 10 ♙×e2
♙d5 11 0-0 h4 (also possible is
11 ... ♖d7 12 ♙e3 ♖b6 with ap-
proximately equal play) 12 ♖e4
♖d7 13 ♙f4 0-0-0 14 h3 ♖g8, and
Black has good counterplay on the
g-file (Boleslavsky).

9 ... ♙g4–e6

If 9 ... h4 10 fg hg 11 h3 e5
12 ♙e3 White has a lasting advan-
tage.

10 ♙f1–d3 ♙d8–c7

If 10 ... h4, so 11 ♖e2 followed
by 12 ♙f4, and White has the
slightly better game. 10 ... ♙a5!
deserves consideration (Larsen).

11 ♖g3–e2 ♙f8–h6

12 ♙c1×h6 ♖h8×h6

13 ♙d1–d2 ♖h6–h8

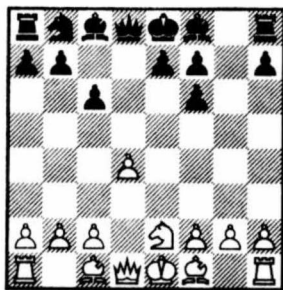
14 ♗e2-f4 ♖c7-d6

15 0-0

White's position is preferable (Muchnik-Voronkov, Moscow 1957).

B

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♗×e4 ♗f6 5 ♗×f6+ gf) 6 ♗g1-e2



This knight manoeuvre is popular. It is, however, not as effective before the bishop move to f5, as it is in the previous variation with 6 c3 ♗f5 7 ♗e2.

6 ... h7-h5!

This is the reply that secures Black good counterplay.

Alternatively, the following lines may follow:

1) 6 ... ♗f5 7 ♗g3 ♗g6 8 h4 h5 (another continuation is 8 ... h6 9 h5 ♗h7 10 c3 e6 — White had a strong initiative in a game Horowitz-Flohr, radio match USSR — USA 1945, after 10 ... ♖b6 11 ♗c4 ♗d7 12 a4 a5 13 ♖f3 e6 14 0-0 ♗c2 15 ♗f4 ♗b3 16 ♗d3 e5 17 ♗e3 ♗d5 18 ♗e4 — 11 ♗e3 ♗d7 12 ♖d2 ♖a5 13 ♗e2 0-0-0

14 ♗×h6 ♗×h6 15 ♖×h6, Mecking-Larsen, San Antonio 1972) 9 ♗e2 ♗d7 10 c3 ♖a5 11 b4 ♖c7 12 ♗×h5 (worth considering is 12 ♗×h5!?) 12 ... ♗×h5 (12 ... a5 13 ♗f4! with double-edged play) 13 ♗×h5 a5 (Bošković-Rohde, USA 1979). White was able to obtain a small advantage with the continuation 14 ♗e2! ab 15 cb e5 16 b5.

2) 6 ... ♗g4 7 ♖d3 ♗h5 (a game Browne-Kaválek, USA 1971, went 7 ... ♗d7! 8 h3 — 8 ♗g3! — 8 ... ♗×e2 9 ♗×e2 ♖c7 10 ♗e3 e6 11 0-0 ♗d6 12 c4 0-0-0 13 d5!, and White had some initiative) 8 ♖b3 ♖c8 (after 8 ... ♖b6 9 ♖h3! ♗×e2 10 ♗×e2 ♗d7 11 ♗h5! ♗g7 12 0-0 ♗f8 13 ♗e3! White has the advantage, Marić-Kržišnik, Vukovar 1966) 9 ♗f4 ♗g6 10 ♗c4 e6 11 0-0 ♗a6 12 ♗e1 ♗e7 13 ♗×e6 fe 14 ♗×e6 ♖c7 15 ♗h6 ♗d8 (Bednarsky-Ermenkov, Varna 1972). With 16 ♗ad1 ♖b6 17 d5! White was able to achieve a clear advantage (Minev).

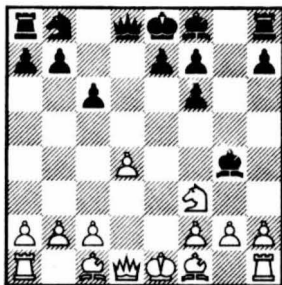
If 6 ... c5 7 d5 or 6 ... e5 7 ♗e3 ♗e6 8 ♗g3 and also after 6 ... e6 7 ♗g3 c5 8 ♗e3 cd 9 ♖×d4 ♖×d4 10 ♗×d4 White retains the advantage.

(see diagram)

7 ♖d1-d3 ...

The following continuations are also possible:

1) 7 h4 ♗g4 8 c3 (after 8 ♖d3 e5!

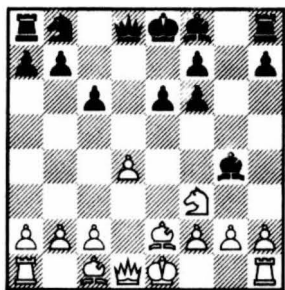


According to Larsen Black is able to equalise with 8 ... ♗c7!

2) 7 g3 e6 8 ♖g2 ♖d7 9 0-0 ♖g7! 10 ♖e1 0-0 11 ♖e3 ♖e8 12 ♗c1 ♖f8 with equal chances (Konstantinopolsky–Flohr, 14th USSR Championship, 1945).

7 ... ♗d8–c7

Often 7 ... e6 is also played, with the following lines emerging:



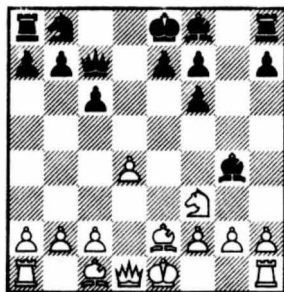
1) 8 h3 ♖h5 9 0-0 ♖d6 (if 9 ... ♖g7 10 ♖f4 0-0 11 c4 White has a clear advantage) 10 ♖e3 ♖d7 11 c4 ♖g6 (also playable is 11 ... ♗c7!) 12 d5! ed (or 12 ... cd 13 cd e5 14 ♗b3 b6 15 ♖b5 with strong pressure by White, Tringov) 13 cd c5 14 ♖h6 ♗a5 15 ♖d2 0-0-0 16 ♖c4 ♗c7 17 ♗a4, and

Black has trouble equalising (Tringov–Opočensky, Bratislava 1957).

2) 8 ♖f4 ♖d7 (also possible is 8 ... ♖d6 9 ♗d2 ♗c7 10 ♖×d6 ♗×d6 11 c4 ♖d7 12 0-0 0-0! 13 ♖ad1 ♖h8! with unclear play) 9 0-0 ♖b6 10 ♖e1 ♖d6 11 ♖g3 ♖×g3 12 hg ♗d5 13 c3 h5 14 ♗c1 0-0-0, and the chances are roughly equal (Bronstein–Flohr, USSR 1945).

3) 8 0-0 ♖d6 9 c4 (9 h3 h5!) 9 ... ♖g8 10 ♖h1 ♖d7 11 d5 ♖c5 12 ♖d4 (12 dcl?) 12 ... f5 13 ♖×g4 ♖×g4 14 h3 ♗f6 15 ♖f3 ♖×c4 16 dc ♖e4 17 cb ♖b8 with sharp play and equal chances (Tringov–Smyslov, Havana 1965).

4) 8 c3 ♖d7 9 ♖h4 ♖×e2 10 ♖×e2 ♗a5 11 0-0 0-0-0 12 ♖e3 ♖g8 13 a3 f5 14 ♖f3 ♗d5, and Black has sufficient counterplay (Yanofsky–Szabó, Dallas 1957).



Here, mainly the following variations should be considered: 8 h3 (1), 8 0-0 (2) and 8 ♖e3 (3).

In addition to these continuations

we shall briefly examine a number of other possible lines:

1) 8 ♖h4! ♗×e2 9 ♗×e2 e6 10 0-0 ♖d7 11 c4 0-0-0 (or 11 ... ♖b6 12 g3 h5 13 ♗f4 ♗e7 14 ♖fd1, and White exerts some pressure, Olafsson-Bhend, Zurich 1959) 12 g3 (after 12 ♖f3 ♖g8 13 ♗d2 c5 14 ♗e3 ♗c6 15 g3 ♗e4 16 ♖d2 ♗g4 the game is level, Hecht-Smyslov, Hamburg 1965) 12 ... h5 (after 12 ... ♖g8 13 d5! ♗e5 14 ♗f3 cd 15 ♗f4 Black has considerable difficulties, Matanović-Čirić, Yugoslavia 1965) 13 d5! ♖e8 14 ♗f4 ♗d6 15 ♗×d6 ♗×d6 16 dc ♗×c6 17 b4 with a marginal advantage for White (Gurgenidze-Savon, 29th USSR Championship, 1961).

2) 8 c3 ♖d7 9 ♗a4 e6 10 ♗d2 (if 10 0-0 ♖g8 11 ♗e3 ♖b6 followed by ♖d5 and Black has good play) 10 ... ♖g8 11 0-0-0 ♗f5! 12 ♖h4 ♗e4 13 f3 b5 14 ♗b3 ♗d5, and the chances are roughly equal (Lisitsin-Konstantinopolsky, USSR 1947).

3) 8 ♗d2?! ♖d7 9 ♗f4 ♗×f4 10 ♗×f4 ♖b6, and Black has no worries (Arnstein-Semyonov, USSR 1962).

1

8 h2-h3 ♗g4-h5

A game Smyslov-Ratner (14th USSR Championship, 1945) went 8 ... ♗f5 9 c4 ♖d7 10 0-0 ♖g8? 11 ♖h4! ♗g6 12 ♖×g6 hg 13 d5!,

and White began an effective attack in the centre.

9 0-0 ♖b8-d7

Less flexible is 9 ... e6 10 c4 ♖d7 11 d5!, and again an unpleasant situation is developing in the centre for Black.

10 d4-d5 ♖a8-d8

After 10 ... 0-0-0 11 ♗d4 c5 12 ♗a4 followed by 13 ♗f4 White has good chances for an attack on the Q-side.

10 ... cd 11 ♗×d5 ♗g6 and then e6 and 0-0-0 deserves attention, and Black's position is satisfactory (Boleslavsky).

11 c2-c4 ♖d7-b6

12 ♗c1-e3

White has a small advantage which cannot be easily neutralised, not even by trading off pieces 12 ... ♗×f3 13 ♗×b6! ab 14 ♗×f3 cd 15 cd.

2

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖f6 5 ♖×f6+ gf 6 ♖f3 ♗g4 7 ♗e2 ♗c7)

8 0-0 ♖b8-d7

9 c2-c4 ...

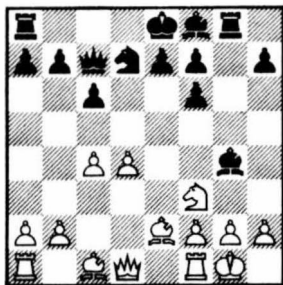
Here, White can proceed with 9 ♖h4 transposing into the line just examined. The move 9 h3 can be followed by 9 ... h5!

9 ... ♖h8-g8

(see diagram)

10 d4-d5 ...

10 ♗e3 0-0-0 11 ♗a4 ♖b8! leads



to double-edged play (but not 11 ... e5? 12 ♖fe1 e4 13 ♖h4 ♖d6 14 g3 ♖h3 15 ♖f1 ♖×f1 16 ♖×f1, and Black is in serious difficulties, Levenfish–Sokolsky, 17th USSR Championship, 1949) 12 ♖fd1 (after 12 ♖h1 f5 13 d5 c5 14 b4 e5 15 ♖ab1 f4! Black obtained excellent counterplay in a game Khudyaikov–Selevinsky, USSR 1965) 12 ... e6 13 b4 f5 14 d5 c5 (Goldenov–Konstantinopolsky, USSR 1937).

10 ... e7–e5

11 d5×c6

Euwe's recommendation which secures a slight advantage for White after 11 ... ♖×c6 12 ♖h1.

3

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖f6 5 ♖×f6+ gf 6 ♖f3 ♖g4 7 ♖e2 ♖c7)

8 ♖c1–e3 ♖b8–d7

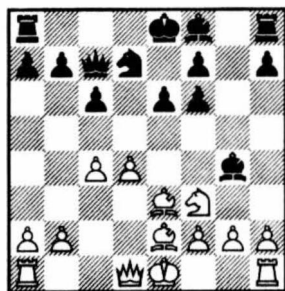
9 c2–c4 ...

If 9 h3 ♖f5 10 ♖h4 ♖g6 11 ♖c4 e6 12 ♖e2 0-0-0 13 0-0-0 (Keres–Konstantinopolsky, 20th USSR Championship, 1952) then Black plays 13 ... ♖b6 14 ♖b3

♖d5 which gives him a very solid position.

A game Gufeld–Bronstein (USSR 1959) went 9 ♖d2 0-0-0 10 0-0-0 ♖g8 11 ♖f4 ♖b6 12 ♖d3 ♖e6 13 a3 with almost equal play.

9 ... e7–e6



Now the following variations can arise:

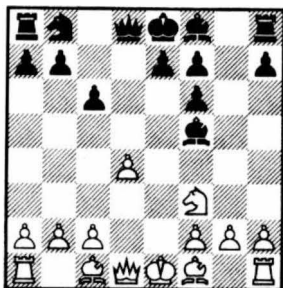
1) 10 ♖d2 ♖×e2 11 ♖×e2 f5 12 d5 0-0-0 13 ♖d4 ♖g8 14 de fe 15 0-0-0 e5, and the chances are approximately even (Taimanov–Flohr, 16th USSR Championship, 1948).

2) 10 ♖b3 0-0-0 11 ♖c1 ♖d6! (weaker is 11 ... ♖b6? 12 ♖×b6 ab 13 ♖d2! ♖×e2 14 ♖×e2 ♖e7 15 ♖hd1 with initiative for White) 12 d5 ♖e5, and Black obtains good counterplay.

3) 10 ♖a4 ♖g8 11 h3 ♖h5! (after 11 ... ♖f5 12 ♖h4 ♖e4 13 0-0-0 White has a strong initiative) 12 0-0 ♖d6 13 b4 ♖f4 14 ♖b3 0-0-0 15 a4 f5 16 ♖fb1 ♖g7, and Black has excellent chances on the K-side (Abroshin–Konstantinopolsky, correspondence game 1955).

b

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4
 ♖f6 5 ♖×f6+ gf 6 ♖f3)
 6 ... ♗c8-f5



7 ♗f1-d3 ...

Other possibilities are:

1) 7 ♗c4 ♗c7!? (after 7 ... ♖g8?!)
 8 ♗f4! e6 9 0-0 ♗d6 10 ♗g3!
 White has the better chances, Boleslavsky) 8 ♗e3 ♖d7 9 ♗d2 e6
 10 ♗f4 ♗d6 11 ♖×d6?! (11 ♗g3)
 11 ... ♗×d6 12 0-0-0 0-0-0 with
 roughly equal chances for both sides
 (Savage-Larsen, Washington 1972).

2) 7 ♗f4 e6 (in a game Karpov-Miles, Bath 1983, White had a minimal advantage after 7 ... ♖d7 8 c3 ♗b6 9 b4 e5 10 ♗g3 0-0-0 11 ♗e2 h5 12 0-0 ♗e4 13 ♖d2 ♗d5 14 ♖×h5 ed 15 c4 ♗e6 16 a3) 8 ♗c4 ♖a6! 9 0-0 ♖c7 10 ♗g3 ♗d6 11 ♖e1 ♗d7 12 ♖h4 ♗g6 13 c3 0-0-0 with equal play for Black (Tal-Larsen, Riga 1979).

7 ... ♗f5-g6

Possibly better is 7 ... ♗×d3 8 ♗×d3 ♗c7 9 0-0 ♖d7 10 c4 e6, and Black builds up a solid defensive

position (F. Nilsen-Pedersen, Denmark 1979).

8 0-0 ♗d8-c7

After 8 ... e6 9 c4 ♗d6 10 d5! ♗c7 11 de fe 12 ♖e1 ♗f7 13 ♗f5 e5 14 ♗d3 White is firmly in control (Bitman-Rosanov, USSR 1962).

9 c2-c4 ♖b8-d7

10 d4-d5 0-0-0

11 ♗c1-e3 e7-e5

12 ♗d3-e2 ♗c8-b8

13 ♖a1-c1 f6-f5

Or 13 ... c5 14 ♖h4 f5 15 f4! with strong pressure from White.

14 c4-c5!

White has undoubtedly the upper hand (Radulov-Larsen, Hastings 1972/73). There may now follow for example 14 ... cd 15 c6! bc 16 ♗b5!

D

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖f6 5 ♖×f6+ gf)

6 ♗f1-e2 ...

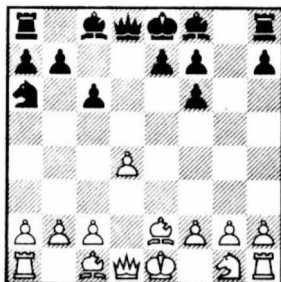
This flexible move is also frequently played in practice. But its passive nature allows Black to obtain sufficient counterplay for equality without much effort.

6 ... ♗c8-f5

6 ... ♖a6 is also possible, e. g.:

(see diagram)

7 ♖f3 (after 7 c3 ♖c7 8 ♖f3 ♗g4 9 ♖h4 ♖×e2 10 ♗×e2 ♖d5 11 0-0 0-0-0 12 ♗e3 ♗e4 the chances are equal, Matulović-Ćirić, Yugoslavia 1964) 7 ... ♗g4 8 0-0 ♖c7 9 c4 ♗d7 10 ♗e3 (10 ♗f4!?) 10 ... ♗g7 (a game Matulović-Hort,



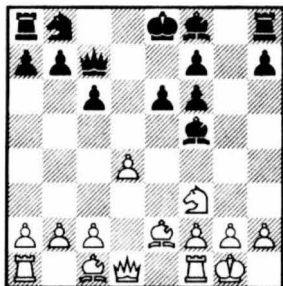
Sarajevo 1965, went 10 ... h5? 11 ♖b3 b6 12 d5 c5 13 ♖ad1 ♖d6 14 ♖fe1 ♖g7 15 ♖h4!, and White obtained a clear advantage) 11 ♖h4 f5! 12 h3 ♖×e2 13 ♖×e2 f4 14 ♖×f4 ♖c6 15 ♖e3 ♖×d4 16 ♖h5 0-0-0 with chances for both sides (Jangarber–Kopylov, USSR 1968).

7 ♖g1–f3 ...

A game Lasker–Nimzowitsch (St. Petersburg 1914) continued 7 ♖f3 ♖a5+ 8 c3 h5?! 9 ♖×h5 ♖d7 10 ♖g4 ♖×g4 11 ♖×g4 0-0-0 with double-edged play.

7 ... c7–e6

8 0-0 ♖d8–c7



In addition the following variations are possible:

1) 8 ... ♖g7 9 c4 (in a game Ciocal-

tea–Botvinnik, Hamburg 1965, equal play resulted from 9 ♖e1 0-0 10 ♖f4 ♖b6 11 ♖c1 ♖d7 12 a4 c5 13 ♖e3 ♖c7) 9 ... 0-0 10 ♖e3 ♖d7 11 d5, and White has some initiative (Ivkov–Donner, Santa Monica 1966). 2) 8 ... ♖d7 9 c4 ♖g6?! (9 ... ♖c7 is better) 10 d5! e5 11 ♖d2 ♖c7 12 ♖b3 ♖d6 (Kaválek–Bronstein, Szombathely 1966). White was able to obtain the better chances by playing 13 dc bc 14 ♖e3 ♖d8 15 ♖e1 9 c2–c4 ♖b8–d7

White obtains the more active game after 9 ... ♖d6 10 d5 c5 11 ♖h4! ♖×h2+ 12 ♖h1 ♖g6 13 de fe 14 ♖g4 f5 15 ♖×f5 ef 16 ♖e1+ ♖e5 17 ♖f4 (Matulović–Flesch, Yugoslavia–Hungary 1964).

10 d4–d5 ...

In a game Kaplan–Larsen (San Antonio 1972) Black seized the initiative after 10 ♖d2 ♖d6 11 ♖h1 ♖g8! 12 c5?! ♖e7 13 ♖c1 ♖e4 14 ♖f4 ♖a5 15 ♖g3 h5.

10 ... 0-0-0

11 d5×c6 ...

11 ♖d4 ♖g6 12 de ♖e5! is favourable for Black.

Spassky–Larsen (Buenos Aires 1979) went 11 ♖e3? c5! 12 b4 ♖g8 13 bc?! ♖×c5, and Black seized the initiative.

11 ... b7×c6

12 ♖c1–e3 ♖f8–c5

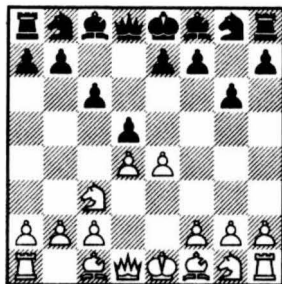
13 ♖d1–c1 ♖h8–g8

14 ♖f1–d1 ♖c7–b6

Black has equal play (Kaválek–Larsen, Solingen 1970).

Chapter 4

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 g6



This system which represents a conglomerate of the ideas of the Caro-Kann Defence and the Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence has become very popular in the past decade. The struggle now features complex positional character.

White has two main plans: 4 e5 (I), which gives the game a closed nature, and 4 ♖f3 (II), which retains the tension.

A rather rare continuation is 4 ed cd 5 ♖f3 (after 5 ♖f4 ♖g7 6 ♖b5?!) ♖a6 7 ♗e2 ♖f6 8 ♖d6+ ♗f8 9 ♖xc8 ♖xc8 10 c3 ♖c7 11 f3 ♖ce8 12 g4 h5! Black obtains excellent counter-chances, Nurmamedov–Botvinnik, Moscow 1966) 5 ... ♖g7, and now:

1) 6 ♖f4 ♖g4 (6 ... a6!?) 7 ♖b5 ♖a6 8 h3 ♖xf3 9 ♗xf3 ♖f6 10 ♖d3 0-0 11 c3 ♖e8 12 0-0 e6 13 ♗g3 with a small plus for White (Krnić–Notaroš, Krk 1976).

2) 6 ♖b5+ ♖d7 7 ♗e2 ♖f6 8 ♖g5 0-0 9 ♖xf6 ef 10 ♖xd7

♗xd7 11 0-0 (Leonidov–Kogan, Moscow 1969). Here Black was able to achieve equal play after the move 11 ... ♖c6!

3) 6 ♖e5 ♖f6 7 ♗f3 0-0 8 ♖d3 ♖c6 9 ♖xc6 bc 10 0-0 ♖d7 11 ♗f4 ♗b6 12 ♖e1 ♖e8 13 ♖e2 e5! with excellent black counterplay (Lažarević–Gaprindzhvili, 1970).

I

4 e4–e5 ♖f8–g7

5 f2–f4 ...

Also possible is 5 ♖f3 (worth consideration is 5 ♖d3) 5 ... ♖h6 (5 ... ♖f5 6 ♖d3 ♖xd3 7 ♗xd3 ♖h6? 8 e6! is in White's favour) 6 ♖e2 f6 7 ♖f4 ♖f7 8 ♗d2 0-0 9 h3 fe 10 ♖xe5 ♖d7 11 ♖xf7 ♖xf7 12 ♖e3 e5!, and Black has no difficulties (Bellin–Gipslis, Tbilisi 1977).

5 ... h7–h5

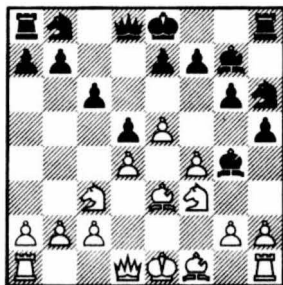
After 5 ... ♖h6 6 ♖f3 ♖g4 7 h3 ♖xf3 8 ♗xf3 ♖f5 9 ♖e2 ♗b6 10 c3 e6 11 g4! White has good chances on the K-side (Kupreichik–Sveshnikov, Chelyabinsk 1974).

6 ♖c1–e3 ...

A game Fischer–Petrosian (Belgrade 1970) went 6 ♖f3 ♖g4 7 h3 ♖xf3 8 ♗xf3 e6 9 g3 (worth considering is 9 ♖e3 h4 10 ♖d3) 9 ... ♗b6! 10 ♗f2 ♖e7 11 ♖d3 ♖d7 12 ♖e2 0-0-0 13 c3 f6!, and Black had equal play.

6 ... ♖g8–h6

7 ♖g1–f3 ♖c8–g4



The critical position; the following examples are typical:

1) 8 ♖e2 ♖d7 9 ♗d2 e6 10 g3 ♖f8 11 h3 ♖×f3 12 ♖×f3 ♖f5 13 ♖f2 h4! 14 g4 ♖g3 15 ♖g1 ♗b6 16 0-0-0 ♗a6 17 ♗d3 ♗×d3 18 ♖×d3 c5! with roughly equal chances (Arnason–Sigurjonsson, Reykjavik 1986).

2) 8 h3 ♖×f3 9 ♗×f3 h4 10 ♖d3 e6 11 0-0 ♖f8 12 ♖e2 ♖d7 13 b3 ♖f5 14 ♖f2 ♗a5! (14 ... ♖e7 is preferable) 15 a3 b5 16 c4 bc 17 bc ♖b8 18 ♖fb1 ♖×b1+ 19 ♖×b1 ♖b6 20 cd cd 21 ♖b5+, and White's chances are slightly better (Sokolov–Seret, 1984 Olympiad).

II

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 g6)
4 ♖g1–f3 ♖f8–g7
5 h2–h3

Other possibilities are:

1) 5 ♖d3 ♖g4 6 e5 (6 ed cd 7 h3 ♖×f3 8 ♗×f3 e6 9 ♖e2 ♖c6 10 c3 ♖ge7 11 0-0 0-0 leads to almost equal play) 6 ... e6 7 h3 ♖×f3 8 ♗×f3 ♖d7 9 0-0 ♖e7 10 ♖e2 c5 with equal chances

(de Firmian–Dzindzihashvili, USA 1984).

2) 5 ♖e2 ♖g4 6 0-0 de 7 ♖×e4 ♖×f3 8 ♖×f3 ♗×d4 9 ♗e2 ♖d7 10 ♖d1 ♗e5, and it is not easy for White to prove compensation for the pawn (Treybal–Přibyl, Stary Smokovec 1976).

After 5 h3 Black has the following replies to choose from:

1) 5 ... ♖h6 6 ♖f4 (if 6 ♖d3 f6 7 0-0 0-0 8 ♖e1 ♖f7 Black has good counterplay in the centre; interesting is 6 e5 f6 7 ♖f4 0-0 8 ♗d2 ♖f7 9 0-0-0, M. Tseitlin–Bukhman, Leningrad 1973, or also 6 g4!?, Varnusz) 6 ... de (6 ... f6 7 ed cd 8 ♖b5 ♖a6 9 c4! is in White's favour, Keres–Karner, Tallinn 1973) 7 ♖×e4 0-0 8 ♗d2 ♖f5 9 c3 ♖d7 10 0-0-0, and White has a small advantage (Suetin's recommendation).

2) 5 ... ♖f6 6 ♖d3 (after 6 e5 ♖e4 7 ♖×e4 de 8 ♖g5 c5 Black obtains active counterplay in the centre, Spassky–Tseschkovsky, USSR 1974) 6 ... de 7 ♖×e4 ♖×e4 8 ♖×e4 0-0 9 0-0 ♖d7 10 c3 (in a game Chandler–Christiansen, 1986 Olympiad, the chances were even after 10 ♖g5!?, h6 11 ♖e3 c5!?, 12 dc ♗c7 13 ♗e2 ♖b8 14 ♗b5 ♖f6) 10 ... c5 11 ♖g5 (worth considering is 11 ♖c2 cd 12 ♖×d4 e5! 13 ♖b5 with better chances for White, Bronstein–Tseschkovsky, 41st USSR Championship, 1973) 11 ... h6! 12 ♖f4 cd 13 cd ♖f6 14 ♖c2

♙e6 15 ♗d2 ♙d5, and Black has solved his defence problems successfully (Kudrin–Dzindzihashvili, USA 1984).

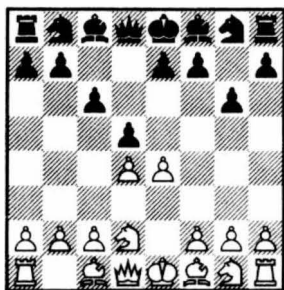
3) 5 ... de 6 ♖×e4 ♖bd7 (after 6 ... ♗f6 7 ♖×f6+ ef — 7 ... ♙×f6 8 ♙h6! — 8 ♙c4 ♗e7+ 9 ♙e3! or 6 ... ♙f5 7 ♖c5! ♗d7 8 ♖×d7 ♗×d7 9 ♖e5!, Urzica–Honfi, Bucharest 1975, White retains the initiative) 7 ♙c4 ♖gf6 8 ♖×f6+ ♖×f6 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♖e1 c5! 11 dc ♗×d1 12 ♖×d1 ♗d7, and Black has good chances of equalising (Konstantinopolsky).

Variation 3 ♖d2

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2

This development of the knight has not been used until recently, and it is linked with the fast spread of the system 3 ♖c3 g6. Often the game now transposes into the main variations after 3 ... de 4 ♖×e4. We shall deal only with variations linked with the fianchetto of Black's dark-squared bishop.

3 ... g7–g6



There can now follow:

1) 4 ♖gf3 ♙g7 5 c3 ♖h6 (after 5 ... ♗d7 6 ♙d3 de 7 ♖×e4 ♖gf6 8 ♖×f6+ ♖×f6 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♖e1 White has a sound space advantage, Savon–Tseschkovsky, Vilnius 1975) 6 ♙d3 0-0 7 0-0 ♗d7 8 e5 ♖e8! 9 h3 f6 10 ef ef 11 ♖b3 ♖f8 12 ♙f4 a5! with equal play for Black (Prasad–Skembris, 1986 Olympiad).

2) 4 c3 ♖f6! (in a game Geller–Botvinnik, USSR 1967, White had the freer play after 4 ... ♙g7 5 ♙d3 de 6 ♖×e4 ♙f5 7 ♖c5 b6 8 ♖b3 ♙×d3 9 ♗×d3 ♖f6 10 ♖f3 0-0 11 0-0 ♗c7 12 ♖e1 ♖c8 13 ♖e5) 5 e5 ♖h5 6 g3 (also possible is 6 ♖df3 ♖g7 7 h3 ♗b6 8 ♖e2) 6 ... ♖g7 7 h4 h5 8 ♙e2 ♙f5 9 ♖gf3 e6 10 ♖g5 c5 with double-edged play (Georgadze–Gurgenidze, USSR 1986).

Part II

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5

This section comprises all variations which have not been analysed so far and which start with the moves 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5. The Panov Attack 3 ed cd 4 c4 enjoys a position of eminence among them. Also surveyed are the exchange variation 3 ed cd followed by c3 and the closed system 3 e5. We shall deal first with the rather rare variations arising after 3 f3.

Chapter 1

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 f3 and 3 ed ed 4 d3

System 3 f3

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5)

3 f2-f3 ...

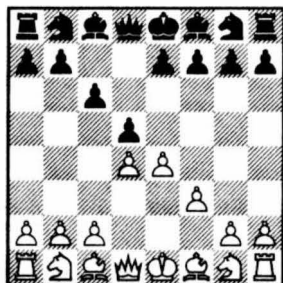
A somewhat artificial fortification of the pawn position in the centre. The pawn prevents the king's knight from going to f3. Due to the weakening of White's K-side Black, in some cases, obtains counterplay.

(see diagram)

3 ... e7-e6

Other possibilities are:

1) 3 ... de 4 fe e5 5 d3 e6l (after 5 ... dg4 6 d4 d7 7 c3 or 5 ... ed 6 d4 White achieves a dangerous initiative) 6 c3 (6 d3 d4) 6 ... d6 7 d3 d7



8 e2 d6 9 d2 e7 with equal chances (Kasparian-Holmov, Tbilisi 1949).

2) 3 ... g6 4 d3 g7 5 e3 b6 (a game Barczay-Vadasz, Hungary 1980, continued 5 ... de 6 fe f6 7 d3 dg4 8 dg5! h6 9 dh4 b6 10 d2! cxb2 11 b1 a3 12 d4! with advantage to White) 6 b1 (6 d2 cxb2 7 b1 a3 leads to double-edged play) 6 ... de 7 fe e5! 8 d3. After 8 ... ed 9 xd4 c7 10 d4 f6 11 0-0 0-0 Black was able to achieve approximate equality.

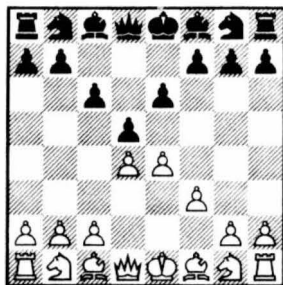
3) 3 ... f6 4 d3 de 5 fe e5 6 d3 ed 7 xd4 dg4 8 d3 (Ozsvath-Popov, Bulgaria 1971). After 8 ... d7 the game is more or less level.

(see diagram)

4 d1-c3 ...

The following moves are also possible:

1) 4 e3 f6 (also good is 4 ... de 5 d2 ef 6 dgxf3 f6 7 d4 e7! with a small advantage to Black, Kasparov; or 4 ... b6



13 ed ♖d4! with good counterplay for Black.

Exchange system

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd)

4 ♖f1-d3 ...

The pawn structure is similar to that of the Queen's Gambit (1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 cd ed) with opposite colours and a plus tempo for White. It is a known fact that early relieving of the central tension facilitates Black's struggle for equality. Here, however, White has an important extra tempo which allows him to move his light-squared bishop to an active position. The result is a secure white position and, under certain circumstances even some initiative.

Let us briefly look at White's other continuations (excluding 4 ♖d3 and the Panov Attack 4 c4):

1) 4 c3 ♖f5 (also after 4 ... ♖c6 5 ♖f4 ♖f5 6 ♖f3 e6 7 ♗b3 ♗c8 8 ♖bd2 ♗f6 9 ♖e2 ♖e7 10 0-0 ♖e4 Black has no worries whatsoever, Larsen-Spassky, San Juan 1969) 5 ♖f3 ♖f6 6 ♖b5+ ♖bd7 7 ♖h4 ♖g6 8 ♖f4 e6 9 ♖d2 ♖h5 10 ♖xg6 hg with equal chances (Fischer-Hort, Vinkovci 1968).

2) 4 ♖f3 ♖g4 5 ♖d3 ♖c6 6 c3 e6 7 ♗b3 ♗d7 8 ♖bd2 with equality.

3) 4 ♖c3 ♖f5 5 ♖f3 ♖c6 6 ♖b5 e6 7 ♖c5 ♗c7 8 g4 ♖g6 9 h4 f6 10 ♖xg6 hg with roughly equal chances.

4 ... ♖b8-c6

5 c2-c3 ...

5 ♖d2 c5, and Black has good play, Gereben) 5 ♖c3 ♗b6 6 ♖b1 c5 7 ed ed 8 ♖b5+ ♖c6 9 ♖ge2, and Black has equal play.

2) 4 ♖d2 de 5 ♖x e4 ♖f6 6 ♖g5 ♖bd7 7 ♗d2 ♖e7 8 ♖x f6+ ♖x f6 9 ♖x f6 ♗x f6, and the fight is even (Jimenez-Barcza, Havana 1963).

4 ... ♖g8-f6

4 ... ♖b4 5 ♖d3 de deserves consideration, and Black has no difficulties (Kasparov).

5 ♖c1-g5 ...

5 e5 ♖fd7 6 f4 c5 leads to a position known from the French Defence.

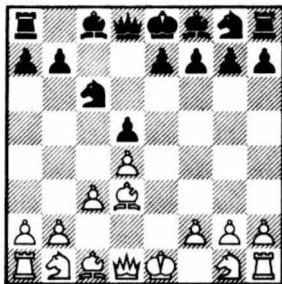
5 ... h7-h6!

More accurate than 5 ... ♗b6. A game Lutikov-Gavrilov (USSR 1972) continued 6 a3 c5 7 ♖e3 ♖d7 8 e5 ♖g8 9 ♖ge2 f6 10 f4 with a white advantage in the centre.

6 ♖g5-h4 ♗d8-b6

7 a2-a3 c6-c5

A game Smyslov-Botvinnik (match 1958) continued 8 ♖ge2 ♖c6 9 dc ♖xc5 10 ♖a4 ♗a5+ 11 ♖ec3 ♖e7 12 ♖x f6 ♖x f6



The starting position of this system. Now the main variations are: 5 ... ♖f6 (I) and 5 ... g6 (II).

Other possibilities are:

1) 5 ... e5 (Holmov's move) 6 de ♖×e5 7 ♖e2 ♖e7 8 ♖b5+ ♖c6. A typical pawn position has now emerged which, with the isolated black central pawn on d5, is characteristic of the Tarrasch System of the French Defence. White has a small positional edge.

2) 5 ... ♖c7 6 ♖e2 e6 7 ♖f4 ♖d6 8 ♖×d6 ♖×d6 9 ♖d2 e5 (a game Mieses-Carls, Baden-Baden 1925, went 9 ... ♖f6 10 ♖f3 0-0 11 0-0 e5 12 de ♖×e5 13 ♖×e5 ♖×e5 14 ♖e1 with a slight white pressure) 10 de ♖×e5 11 ♖b5+ ♖d7 12 ♖×d7+ ♖×d7 13 0-0, and White's chances are somewhat better (Botvinnik).

I

5 ... ♖g8-f6

6 ♖c1-f4 ...

In addition White has the choice between the following continuations:

1) 6 h3 e5 (after 6 ... g6 7 ♖f4 White has a small advantage, his opponent's dark-squared bishop not being as active as his own) 7 de ♖×e5 8 ♖f3 (unpromising is 8 ♖e2 ♖e7 9 ♖b5+ ♖d7 and Black just gains time for development) 8 ... ♖d6 (also possible is 8 ... ♖c6 9 0-0 ♖e7 10 ♖e3 0-0 with equality) 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♖×e5 ♖×e5 11 ♖d2 ♖c7 12 ♖f3 ♖e4 with good piece play for Black).

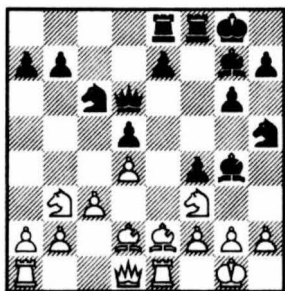
2) 6 ♖g5 ♖g4 (6 ... ♖e4! 7 ♖×e4 de 8 d5 ♖e5 9 ♖a4+ b5! 10 ♖×e4 f6 is interesting, with double-edged play; if 10 ♖×b5+, there follows 10 ... ♖d7 11 ♖e2 ♖d3+!) 7 ♖b3 ♖d7 (in a game Ragozin-Petrosian, USSR 1949, White had a slight advantage after 7 ... ♖b6 8 ♖d2 e6 9 ♖g3 ♖d6 10 0-0 h6 11 ♖×b6 ab 12 ♖e3 0-0 13 ♖fe1) 8 ♖e2 e6 9 ♖g3 ♖h5 10 f3 ♖×g3 11 hg ♖f5 12 ♖×f5 ef, and Black has no worries (van der Bosch-Capablanca, Budapest 1929).

3) 6 ♖f3 ♖g4 7 0-0 e6 8 ♖b3 ♖c7 9 ♖bd2 ♖d6 10 ♖e1 0-0 with slightly better chances for Black (Botvinnik). It should also be mentioned that Black has comfortable play after 6 ♖e2 e5! or 6 f4! g6 7 ♖f3 ♖f5.

6 ... ♖c8-g4

Another common continuation at this point is 6 ... g6 7 ♖f3 (after 7 h3 ♖g7 8 ♖f3 ♖f5 9 0-0 ♖×d3 10 ♖×d3 0-0 11 ♖bd2 ♖b6 Black equalises easily) 7 ... ♖g7 8 ♖bd2

♖h5 (or 8 ... ♖f5 ♗9 ♖×f5 gf 10 ♗b3 with a slight positional advantage to White) 9 ♖e3 0-0 (after both 9 ... f5 10 ♖b3 f4 11 ♖d2 0-0 12 0-0 ♖g4 13 ♖e2 ♗d6 14 ♖c1 ♖f6 15 ♖d3, Hennings-A. Zaitsev, Debrecen 1970, and 9 ... ♗c7 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♖e1 f5 12 ♖b3 f4 13 ♖d2, Bronstein-Dominguez, Las Palmas 1972, White's chances are slightly preferable) 10 0-0 f5 11 ♖b3 ♗d6 12 ♖e1 f4 13 ♖d2 ♖g4 14 ♖e2 ♖ae8.



At this point Fischer-Czerniak (Natanya 1968) continued 15 ♖c1 ♖×f3 16 ♖×f3 e5 with good play for Black. He should not have answered 17 ♗b3 with 17 ... ed? 18 ♖d3! ♖d8 19 c4 dc 20 ♗×c4+ ♗h8 21 ♖e6, which gave White an advantage, but with 17 ... e4! instead, e. g. 18 ♖×e4? ♖×e4 19 ♖×e4 ♖a5 20 ♗a4 de 21 ♗×a5 e3! with a dangerous attack. The following is a typical variation mentioned by Boleslavsky: 22 fe fe 23 ♖×e3 ♗e6 24 ♖f2 ♖f4 25 ♗b5 ♗e4 26 ♗f1 ♗c2.

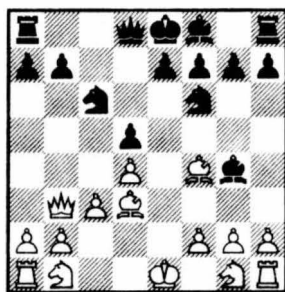
Therefore, instead of 18 ♖×e4, the continuation 18 ♖×e4 ♖a5 19 ♖×e8! ♖×b3 20 ♖×f8+ ♖×f8 21 ab is better with good compensation for the queen. 15 ♖e5 instead of 15 ♖c1 can be considered, offering White a slight advantage.

7 ♗d1-b3

Other possibilities are:

- 1) 7 ♖f3 ♗b6 8 ♗b3 ♖×f3 9 gf e6 10 ♖d2 ♖d7 (Milner-Barry-Flohr, Hastings 1934/35).
- 2) 7 ♖e2 ♗d7 8 ♗b3 ♖h5 9 0-0 ♖g6.
- 3) 7 f3 ♖h5 8 ♖e2 e6 9 ♖d2 ♖d6.

In all cases Black has equal play.



7 ♗b3 can be followed by:

- 1) 7 ... ♖a5 8 ♗a4+ ♖d7 9 ♗c2 a6 (a game Fischer-Petrosian, FIDE select team-USSR 1970, went 9 ... e6 10 ♖f3 ♗b6 11 a4! ♖c8 12 ♖bd2 ♖c6 13 ♗b1 with a persistent white initiative) 10 ♖f3 b5 11 ♖bd2 g6 12 0-0 ♖g7 13 ♖fe1 0-0 14 b4, and White maintains a slight but lasting pressure.
- 2) 7 ... ♗c8 8 ♖d2 e6 9 ♖gf3

♖e7 10 ♖e5 (also good is 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♖e5, Browne–Larsen, San Antonio 1972) 10 ... ♖×e5 11 ♖×e5 (after 11 de ♖d7 12 0-0 ♖c5 13 ♖b5+ ♖f8 Black has equalised, Hübner–Smyslov, Hastings 1968/69) 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♖c2 ♖f5 13 ♖×f5 ef 14 ♖b3 ♖c6 15 a4! with a slight advantage to White (Botvinnik).

3) 7 ... ♖d7 8 ♖d2 e6 9 ♖gf3 (Tringov–Pomar, Büsum 1968). After 9 ... a6! 10 0-0 ♖h5 11 ♖e5 White has only a marginal advantage.

II

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 ♖d3 ♖c6 5 c3)

5 ... g7–g6

In this continuation frequently played by Bronstein Black seeks to build a secure fortification on the K-side and, if the occasion arises, to develop his queen's bishop to g4, and to exchange it for the white knight. Here too Black finds it difficult to equalise.

6 ♖g1–f3 ♖c8–g4

Another possibility is 6 ... ♖g7 7 h3 (in a game Mecking–Ciocaltea, Vršac 1971, White had a small advantage after 7 ♖f4 ♖h6 8 ♖bd2 0-0 9 0-0 f6 10 c4; 8 ♖d2 is also good; in a game Kremenetsky–Rasuvayev, Moscow 1971, Black achieved excellent play after 8 0-0 ♖f5 9 ♖e1 0-0 10 ♖f1? — better is 10 ♖e5 — 10 ... f6 11 ♖bd2 ♖f7 12 ♖g3 e5) 7 ... ♖h6 8 ♖f4 0-0

9 ♖d2 ♖f5 10 0-0 f6 11 ♖e1 ♖e8 12 c4 ♖c×d4 13 ♖×d4 ♖×d4 14 cd with a slight advantage to White (M. Tseitlin–Savon, 37th USSR Championship, 1970).

The move 6 ... ♖f5!7 awaits testing.

7 ♖d1–b3 ...

A game Masionshik–Bronstein (USSR 1969) continued 7 h3 ♖×f3 8 ♖×f3 ♖g7 9 0-0 e6 10 ♖d2 ♖f6 11 ♖e2 ♖d6 12 ♖f3 ♖d7 13 ♖e1 a6 14 ♖g5 0-0 15 ♖d2 ♖fe8 16 ♖f4 ♖e7 17 ♖e2 b5 18 a3 ♖a5 19 ♖ae1 ♖c4 20 ♖c1 ♖ac8 21 ♖h6 with a slight initiative to White.

7 ... ♖g4×f3

8 ♖b3×b7 ♖d8–c8

9 ♖b7×c8+ ♖a8×c8

A game Rossolimo–Bronstein (Monte Carlo 1969) continued 10 gf ♖×d4 11 ♖e3, and here Black should have played 11 ... ♖×f3+ 12 ♖e2 ♖e5, where his chances would have been only slightly worse. The game, however, went 11 ... ♖c6 12 ♖b5 e5 13 ♖×a7, and White had a solid advantage in the end-game.

Chapter 2

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c4 and 2 c4

This chapter contains the Panov Attack including the variations with 2 c4.

Panov Attack

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd)
4 c2-c4 ...

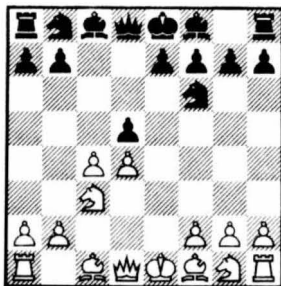
This system which is similar to a number of variations of the Queen's Gambit has been an integral part of openings theory for some time. Frequently positions arise from the improved Tarrasch Defence, e. g. 1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♗c3 ♖f6 4 ♗f3 c5 5 cd ♗xd5 6 e3 ♗c6 7 ♘d3 cd 8 ed, etc.

But there are quite a number of independent ideas and variations for both sides. One is, e. g. the plan of an early advance c4-c5 which creates the prerequisites for a white attack on the Q-side. In a number of lines Black develops the knight to c6 (before the exchange on c4) to press quickly against d4.

4 ... ♗g8-f6

Other moves have no independent significance, e. g. 4 ... e6 5 ♗c3 ♗f6; 4 ... ♗c6 5 cd (after 5 ♗c3 e5 6 cd ♗b4 7 ♘e3 ♘f5 Black has free play, Korn) 5 ... ♗xd5 6 ♗f3, and there emerges a position of the Sicilian Defence (1 e4 c5 2 c3 d5 3 ed ♗xd5 4 d4 cd 5 cd, etc.); 4 ... dc 5 ♘xc4 ♗f6 6 ♗c3 e6 7 ♗f3 leads to a variation of the Queen's Gambit; after 4 ... e5? 5 de d4 6 ♗f3 ♗c6 7 ♘d3 Black's position looks bad.

5 ♗b1-c3 ...



At this point Black has a number of variations to choose from: 5 ... e6 (I), 5 ... ♗c6 (II) and 5 ... g6 (III).

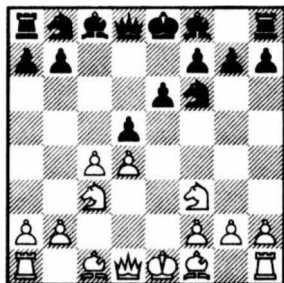
5 ... e7-e6
6 ♗g1-f3 ...

The most natural and, without any doubt, most frequently played move. 6 c5! ♘e7 7 ♗f3 awaits further tests.

6 ♘g5 can be followed by 6 ... ♗c6 7 c5! (White does not achieve anything with 7 cd ed 8 ♘xf6 ♗xf6 9 ♗xd5 ♗d8 or 8 ♘b5 ♘e7 9 ♗ge2 0-0 10 0-0, Pad-evsky-Filip, Harrachov 1966) 7 ... ♘e7 8 ♘b5 0-0 9 ♘xc6 (in a game Keres-Alekhine, Holland 1938, the game was equal after 9 ♗f3 ♗c4 10 ♘xe7 ♗xe7 11 ♗c2 ♗g5 12 ♗xg5 ♗xg5 13 ♘xc6 bc 14 0-0 e5) 9 ... bc 10 ♗f3 ♗e4 11 ♘xe7 ♗xe7 12 0-0 ♗xc3, and Black has no difficulties.

(see diagram)

6 ... ♗f8-c7



In addition the following variations can arise:

1) 6 ... ♖b4 7 cd ♜×d5 (after 7 ... ed 8 ♜a4+ ♜c6 9 ♖b5 0-0 10 0-0 ♜a5 11 ♜d2 ♜×a4 12 ♜×a4 ♜f5 the game is roughly even, Pere-sypkin-Bagirov, USSR 1977) 8 ♜d2 (other variations include: 8 ♜c2 ♜c6 — or also 8 ... ♜e7 9 a3 ♜d7, Suba-Smagin, Moscow 1986 — 9 ♜d3 ♜f6 — or 9 ... ♜e7 10 a3 ♜f6 — 10 0-0 h6 11 ♜d1 0-0 12 a3 ♜d6 13 ♜e4 ♜×e4 14 ♜×e4 ♜d7 15 d5, Sveshnikov-Tal, USSR 1984; 8 ♜b3 ♜c6 9 ♜d3 0-0 10 0-0 ♜×c3 11 bc ♜e7 12 ♜e1, Minić-Spiridonov, Opatija 1984; in both cases White's position is slightly better) 8 ... 0-0 9 ♜d3 b6 (9 ... ♜c6 10 0-0 ♜f6 11 ♜g5 is also played, Banas-Navarovszky, Trenčianske Teplice 1974, as well as 9 ... ♜e7 10 ♜×d5 ♜×d5 11 ♜c2, Ivkov-G. Garcia, Las Palmas 1979; in both cases White has the better play) 10 ♜×d5 ♜×d2+ 11 ♜×d2 ed 12 0-0 ♜a6 13 ♜f3 (after 13 ♜×a6 ♜×a6 14 ♜a4 ♜c7

15 ♜f3 ♜e8 16 ♜fc1 ♜e4 the game is even, Jansa-Spiridonov, Athens 1969) 13 ... ♜×d3 14 ♜×d3 ♜c6 15 ♜ac1, and White has a small advantage.

2) 6 ... ♜c6 7 c5 (this move is particularly good here) 7 ... ♜e4 (after 7 ... ♜e7 8 ♜b5 ♜d7 9 0-0 0-0 10 a3 or 10 ♜e1 White has a slight yet lasting advantage) 8 ♜b5 ♜a5 (a game Holmov-Milić, Belgrade 1967, went 8 ... ♜d7 9 0-0 ♜e7 10 ♜e1 ♜×c3 11 bc 0-0 12 ♜f4, and White's chances are slightly better) 9 ♜b3 ♜c7 10 0-0 ♜e7 11 ♜e1, and White's prospects are brighter (Botvinnik).

7 c4-c5 ...

This move is typical in the Panov Attack.

Other possibilities include:

1) 7 cd ed (after 7 ... ♜×d5 there arises a position of the improved Tarasch Defence of the Queen's Gambit) 8 ♜b5+ (a game Balashov-Larsen, Buenos Aires 1980, proceeded 8 ♜d3 ♜c6 9 h3 0-0 10 0-0 ♜e6 11 ♜e3; with the possible continuation 11 ... ♜c8 12 ♜e2 ♜b4 13 ♜b1 ♜e4! 14 ♜c1 ♜×c3 15 ♜×c3 ♜×c3 16 bc ♜c6 17 ♜d3 ♜c8! Black obtains excellent play; 12 ♜c1 needs testing) 8 ... ♜d7 (White also benefits from 8 ... ♜c6 9 ♜e5 ♜d7 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♜e1 ♜c8 12 ♜f4! with persistent piece pressure in the centre) 9 ♜×d7+ (9 ♜b3! deserves attention) 9 ... ♜b×d7 10 0-0 0-0

11 ♗b3 ♗b6 12 ♜f4, and White has a clear and long-term, though limited positional advantage (Alekhine–Eliskases, Buenos Aires 1939).
 2) 7 ♜g5 0-0 (the most flexible reply; after 7 ... ♗c6 8 ♞c1 0-0 9 c5 ♗e4 10 ♜×e7 ♗×e7 11 ♜e2 ♗×c3 12 ♞×c3 e5 13 ♗×e5 ♗×e5 14 ♞e3 White retains a minimal advantage) 8 c5 (with 8 ♞c1 ♗e4! and also after 8 ♜d3 dc 9 ♜×c4 ♗c6 or 9 ... a6 Black obtains equal chances) 8 ... b6 9 b4 a5 10 a3 ♗e4 11 ♜×e7 ♗×e7 12 ♗×e4 (in Kan–Makogonov, 11th USSR Championship, 1939, Black has excellent play after 12 ♗a4? ab 13 ab bc 14 bc ♗a7 15 ♜d3 ♗a5+ 16 ♗d2 ♜d7) 12 ... de 13 ♗e5 ♗d7!, and Black neutralises White's attempts to retain the initiative (Botvinnik).

3) 7 a3 0-0 8 c5 ♗e4 9 ♗c2 f5 10 ♜e2 ♗c6 11 ♜b5 ♜f6 12 ♜×c6 bc 13 0-0 g5! with sharp black counterplay on the K-side (Keres–Konstantinopolsky, 16th USSR Championship, 1948).

7 ... 0-0

8 ♜f1–d3 ...

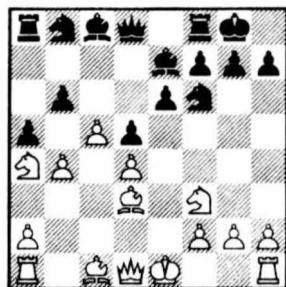
8 b4 ♗e4 9 ♗c2 ♗c6 10 a3 e5 is risky for White and by opening the game very effectively in the centre Black obtains good counter-chances. The advance e6–e5 is a typical strategic motif for positions of the type presented here.

8 ... b7–b6

9 b2–b4 a7–a5

Somewhat premature is 9 ... bc 10 bc ♗c6 11 0-0 ♜d7 12 h3 ♗e8 13 ♜f4 ♜f6 14 ♜b5 ♗c7 (Fischer–Ivkov, Buenos Aires 1960). By playing 15 ♜×c6 ♜×c6 16 ♗d3 White was able to obtain the better chances.

10 ♗c3–a4



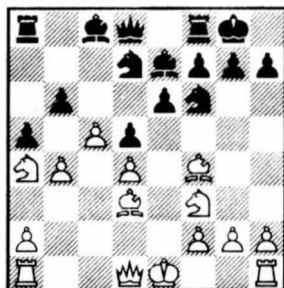
The critical position. Now Black can choose between 10 ... ♗bd7 (A) and 10 ... ♗fd7 (B).

A

10 ... ♗b8–d7

11 a2–a3 ...

Another quite customary continuation is 11 ♜f4 with the following variations:



1) 11 ... ab1? 12 c6 ♖c5 13 dc bc
14 0-0 (14 c7 ♗e8!) 14 ... ♗a5
15 ♖b2 ♖a6 with sharp and unclear
play.

2) 11 ... ♖h5 12 ♖d2 (or 12 ♖g3
f5 13 ♖e5 ♖×g3 14 ♖c6 ♗e8
15 ♖×e7+ ♗×e7 16 hg ab 17 c6
♖f6 18 ♖×b6 ♖a3, and Black has
good counterplay) 12 ... ab 13 c6
with double-edged play (Simagin-
A. Zaitsev, correspondence game
1966).

11 ... a5×b4
12 a3×b4 b6×c5
13 b4×c5 e6-e5!
14 ♖f3×e5 ...

Or 14 de (14 c6 e4 15 cd ♖×d7
gives Black good chances) 14 ...
♖×c5 15 ef ♖×d3+ 16 ♗×d3
♖×f6 17 ♖d4 ♗e8+ 18 ♖e3
♖×a4, and Black has excellent play.

14 ... ♖e7×c5!
15 0-0 ...

Black achieves excellent play after
15 ♖×d7 ♖b4+ 16 ♖d2 ♖×d2+
17 ♗×d2 ♖×d7.

15 ... ♖d7×e5
16 d4×e5 ...

Bad is 16 dc? ♖×d3 17 ♗×d3
♖a6.

16 ... ♖f6-e4

Also possible is 16 ... ♖g4
17 ♖f4 ♖×f2+ 18 ♖×f2 ♖×f2
19 ♖×f2 ♗h4+ 20 ♖g3 ♗d4+
21 ♖f1 ♖h8 with ample counter-
play.

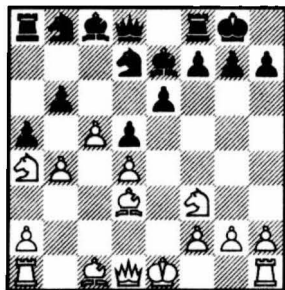
17 ♖d3×e4 d5×e4
18 ♗d1×d8 ♖f8×d8
19 ♖c1-g5 ♖d8-d5

After 20 ♖×c5 (20 ♖fc1? ♖d4!)
20 ... ♖×a1 21 ♖×a1 ♖×c5 the
chances are completely equal (Boles-
lavsky).

B

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c4 ♖f6
5 ♖c3 e6 6 ♖f3 ♖e7 7 c5 0-0
8 ♖d3 b6 9 b4 a5 10 ♖a4)
10 ... ♖f6-d7

This manoeuvre in conjunction
with the ensuing counterplay against
White's central bastions and on the
Q-side promises Black sufficient
chances.



11 b4-b5 ...

In addition White has the follow-
ing possibilities:

1) 11 h4 f5 (if 11 ... h6 12 ♖h3 e5
13 ♖×h6 ♖f6 14 ♖e3 e4 15 ♖g5
g6 16 ♖b5, or 11 ... ab 12 ♖×b6
♖×b6 13 ♖×h7+! White's
chances are clearly better) 12 ♖g5
♗e8 13 ♖f1 ab 14 ♖×e6 ♖×c5
15 ♖a×c5 bc 16 ♖×f8 c4
17 ♖×h7 cd 18 ♖g5 ♖a6 19 ♖g1
♖c6 with equality (Karlsson-Mah-
lin, correspondence game 1970).
2) 11 ♗c2 ♖c6 12 b5 ♖b4

13 ♖xh7+ ♜h8 14 ♗b1 bc 15 dc A
with approximately equal play (Nei-
stadt-Chernyshev, USSR 1959).

11 ... b6xc5

12 d4xc5 e6-e5

But not 12 ... ♖xc5? 13 ♖xc5
♖xc5 14 ♖xh7+ ♜xh7
15 ♖g5+!, and White wins.

13 c5-c6 e5-e4

14 c6xd7 ♖b8xd7

15 0-0 e4xf3

16 ♗d1xf3 ♖d7-e5

17 ♗f3-g3 ♖e5xd3

18 ♗g3xd3 d5-d4

The chances are approximately
equal (Sokolsky-Simagin, correspon-
dence game 1966).

II

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c4 ♖f6
5 ♖c3)

5 ... ♖b8-c6

This move underlines Black's eag-
erness to launch a quick attack
against the opponent's fortifications
in the centre. But it is a committing
line for Black to take. As a rule, it
provokes lively piece play at an early
stage of the game which leaves Black
in a position in which he has to over-
come some difficulties.

It should be noted that White ob-
tains a dangerous initiative by play-
ing 5 ... ♖e6?! 6 ♖ge2! dc 7 ♖f4
♖c8 8 ♖xc4 e6 9 d5 e5 10 0-0!
(Hebden-Martin, Great Britain
1985).

The main continuations for White
are 6 ♖g5 (A) and 6 ♖f3 (B).

6 ♖c1-g5 ...

Here Black has two options to
launch counterplay: 6 ... ♗b6 (a)
and 6 ... ♗a5 (b).

But let us first analyse the follow-
ing moves:

1) 6 ... e6 7 c5 ♖e7 8 ♖b5 0-0

9 ♖xc6 (after 9 ♖f3 ♖e4

10 ♖xe7 ♖xe7! 11 ♖c1 b6

12 ♖xe4 de 13 ♖e5 Black has

good play, e. g. 13 ... bc 14 ♖xc5

♗a5+ 15 ♗d2 ♗xa2, and it will

not be easy for White to find comp-
ensation for the sacrificed pawn, Bo-

leslavsky) 9 ... bc 10 ♖f3 ♖e4

11 ♖xe7 ♗xe7 12 0-0 ♖xc3

13 bc with a small but tangible po-
sitional advantage for White.

2) 6 ... ♖e6!?, and now:

2a) 7 ♗d2 g6 8 g3 ♖a5 9 ♖xf6

ef 10 c5 h5 11 ♖g2 ♖h6 12 ♗c2

0-0 13 ♖ge2 ♖e8 14 0-0 ♖f5 with

a minimal advantage to White

(Sveshnikov-M. Tseitlin, Sochi 1985).

2b) 7 g3 ♗a5!?, 8 ♖g2 ♖e4!?

9 ♖xe4 de 10 d5 0-0-0 11 ♖d2

♖b4 12 ♖xe4 ♖f5 13 ♗b1 ♗b6

14 ♖e2 e6 15 ♖e3 ♗a6!, and Black

has equalised (Tal-Hodgson, Sochi

1986).

2c) 7 ♖xf6 gfl (after 7 ... ef 8 c5

♖e7 9 ♖b5 0-0 10 ♖ge2 ♗c7

11 0-0 f5 12 ♗c2 ♖f6 13 ♖xc6

bc 14 b4!, Botvinnik-Flohr, USSR

1965, or 8 ... g6 9 ♖f3 ♖g7 10 h3

0-0 11 ♖b5, I. Zaitsev-Shamkovich,

USSR 1967, White exerts a persistent

pressure) 8 ♖d2? (8 c5!, 8 cd) 8 ... ♗a5! 9 c5 0-0-0! 10 ♙b5 ♜g8 11 f4 ♙h6! 12 ♗f2 ♖b4, and Black has the advantage (Miles–Yusupov, Tunis 1985).

2d) 7 ♖ge2 dc 8 ♖f4 ♖×d4 9 ♖×e6 ♖×e6 10 ♙×c4 with double-edged play (Velimirović–Ćirić, Yugoslavia 1966).

3) 6 ... dc 7 d5 ♖a5 (if 7 ... ♖e5 8 ♗d4 ♖d3+ 9 ♙×d3 cd 10 ♖f3! White has a perceptible advantage in development and space, Botvinnik–Flohr, match 1933) 8 b4! cb 9 ab b6 (or 9 ... ♗b6 10 ♙b5+ ♙d7 11 ♙×f6 ef 12 ♙×d7+ ♖×d7 13 ♗g4+ ♖d8 14 ♖ge2 with a strong white attack) 10 b4 ♖b7 11 ♙b5+ ♙d7 12 ♖f3, and White has active play for the sacrificed pawn (Boleslavsky).

4) 6 ... ♙g4?! 7 ♙e2! ♙×e2 8 ♖g×e2 dc 9 d5 ♖e5 10 0-0 h6 (White gets a clear advantage after 10 ... g6 11 d6 ed 12 ♙×f6 ♗×f6 13 ♖d5 ♗d8 14 ♗a4+ or 10 ... e6 11 ♙×f6 gf 12 ♗a4+ ♗d7 13 ♖b5 ♜c8 14 de fe 15 ♜ad1) 11 ♙f4 ♖g6 12 ♗a4+ ♗d7 13 ♗×c4 ♜c8 14 ♗b3 e5 15 del, and Black is in serious trouble (Tal–Bronstein, 38th USSR Championship, 1971).

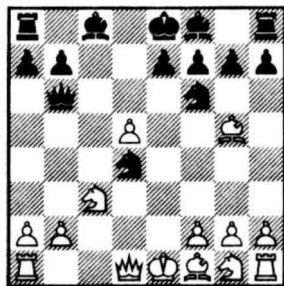
a

6 ... ♗d8–b6!?

In this variation tactical manoeuvres and double-edged situations abound.

7 c4×d5 ♖c6×d4

Not 7 ... ♗×b2? 8 ♜c1 ♖b4 9 ♖a4 ♗×a2 10 ♙c4 ♙g4 11 ♖f3, and Black had to resign (Botvinnik–Spielmann, Moscow 1935).



At this point the game branches off into 8 ♖f3 (1), 8 ♙e3 (2) and 8 ♖ge2 (3).

1

8 ♖g1–f3 ...

A new move which was introduced into practice not long ago. It looks as if it confronts Black with some tough tasks. If 8 ♜c1 e5! Black has free play.

8 ... ♖d4×f3+

9 ♗d1×f3

Dangerous is now 9 ... ♗×b2 10 ♜c1 ♙g4 11 ♗g3 ♜c8 12 ♙b5+ ♙d7 13 0-0 e6 14 ♙×d7+ ♖×d7 15 ♜fd1, and White has a strong attack (Hecht–Lange, FRG 1964). Hort recommends 9 ... ♙d7, and Black contents himself with the slightly worse game.

2

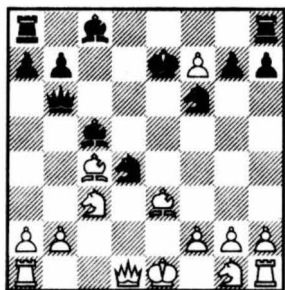
(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c4 ♘f6
5 ♘c3 ♘c6 6 ♘g5 ♘b6! 7 cd
♘×d4)

8 ♘g5-e3 e7-e5
9 d5×e6 ♘f8-c5
10 e6×f7+ ♘e8-e7

Weaker is 10 ... ♘×f7 because
11 ♘c4+ and 12 ♘ge2, and the po-
sition of the black king in the centre
will cause great difficulties for Black.

11 ♘f1-c4 ...

Playing 11 ♘ge2 ♘×b2 12 ♖c1
♖d8 13 ♘×d4 ♘×d4 14 ♘e2
(14 ♘×d4 ♖×d4!) 14 ... ♘×e2+
15 ♘×e2 does not promise any ad-
vantage, and the chances are equal
(Mukhitdinov-Makogonov, USSR
1962).



11 ... ♖h8-d8

Other alternatives are:

- 1) 11 ... ♘×b2! 12 ♘ge2 ♘c2+
13 ♘×c2 ♘×a1+ 14 ♘c1 b5
15 ♘b3 ♘b7 16 0-0 ♖hc8
17 ♘f4!, gives White the advantage
(Dely-Sallay, Hungary 1964).
2) 11 ... ♘g4! 12 ♘c1! (after
12 ♘×g4? ♘c2+ 13 ♘f1 ♘×g4

14 ♘d5+ ♘f8 15 ♘×b6
♘g×e3+ 16 fe ♘×b6 17 ♖c1
♘×e3+ 18 ♘e2 ♖c8 19 b3
♘×c4! the advantage is on Black's
side) 12 ... ♘f5 13 ♘×d4 ♘×d4
14 ♘d2 ♖hc8 15 ♘b3 ♘e6
16 ♘f3. White's chances are clearly
better (Schardtner-Sallay, Hungary
1969).

12 ♘g1-f3 ♘c8-g4

Here too 12 ... ♘×b2 is risky ow-
ing to 13 0-0! ♘×c3 14 ♖c1 ♘b2
15 ♖e1 ♘f8 16 ♘×d4 ♘×d4
(16 ... ♖×d4? 17 ♘h5! is bad)
17 ♘d3 b6 18 ♖cd1 ♘f5 19 ♘×f5
♘×e3 20 fe ♖d2 21 ♘f3 ♖ad8
22 ♘b3, and Black has great diffi-
culties (Botvinnik).

13 ♘e3×d4 ♖d8×d4
14 ♘d1-e2+ ♘e7-f8
15 ♘c4-b3 a7-a5
16 0-0 a5-a4
17 ♘b3-d1

White's position is clearly prefer-
able. But 17 ♘c4? ♘×f3 18 g4
♖h4 is wrong, for it gives Black a
strong attack (Röthgen-Gelenczei,
correspondence game 1967).

3

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c4 ♘f6
5 ♘c3 ♘c6 6 ♘g5 ♘b6 7 cd
♘×d4)

8 ♘g1-e2 ♘d4-f5!
8 ... ♘×e2 9 ♘×e2 ♘×b2
10 ♘b5 ♘e4 11 ♖b1 ♘×a2
12 ♘c7+ ♘d8 13 ♘c6+ fe
14 de+ ♘c7 15 ♖c1+ ♘b8
16 ♘d8! would not be good for Black.

9 ♖d1-d2 h7-h6

10 ♖g5×f6 ...

Worth noting is 10 ♖f4 g5
11 ♖e5 ♖g4 12 ♖d4! it promises
White a small advantage.

10 ... e7×f6

11 ♖e2-g3 ♖f8-d6

12 ♖f1-b5+ ♖e8-f8

13 ♖g3-e4 ♖d6-e5

A game Polugayevsky-Bagirov
(36th USSR Championship, 1969)
then continued 14 0-0 g6 15 a4 a6,
and the opponents agreed on a
draw.

b

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c4 ♖f6
5 ♖c3 ♖c6 6 ♖g5)

6 ... ♖d8-a5

7 ♖g5×f6 ...

The following continuations have
also been tested:

1) 7 ♖d2 ♖e6! (a game Keres-
Czerniak, 1939 Olympiad, continued
7 ... dc 8 ♖×c4 e5 9 d5 ♖d4
10 f4! with a strong white initiative;
White has also a slight advantage
after 7 ... e5 8 ♖×f6 gf 9 ♖×d5
♖×d2+ 10 ♖×d2 ♖h6+ 11 ♖c3
ed+ 12 ♖b3 0-0 13 ♖d3, Hort; it
would be interesting to test 7 ...
♖f5!) 8 ♖f3 dc 9 ♖×f6 ef 10 d5
0-0-0 11 ♖×c4 ♖b4 12 ♖d1 ♖c5!
(weaker is 12 ... ♖e7 13 ♖c1 ♖b8
14 ♖f4 with white superiority)
13 ♖b3 ♖e7 14 0-0 ♖×c3 15 bc
♖×d5 16 ♖d4 ♖he8, and the
struggle is almost equal (Skrobek-
Lechtynsky, Pamporovo 1981).

2) 7 ♖f3 ♖g4 8 ♖×f6 (in Black's
favour is 8 ♖e2? dc 9 ♖×f6 ef
10 d5 ♖×f3 11 gf 0-0-0!, Heuer-
Tal, Viliandi 1972) 8 ... ef 9 cd
♖b4 10 ♖b3 ♖×f3 11 dc ♖×c6
12 ♖c4 ♖a4, and the better chances
are on Black's side (Alburt-Ruderfer,
USSR 1970).

7 ... e7×f6

8 c4×d5 ♖f8-b4

9 ♖d1-d2 ♖b4×c3

Worth noting is 9 ... ♖e7
10 ♖b5+ ♖f8 11 ♖c4? ♖g4!
12 d6 ♖d5 13 ♖c1 ♖c8 14 ♖×d5
♖e8+ 15 ♖f1 ♖a6+ with excel-
lent counterplay for Black (Sanz-
Bellon, Las Palmas 1979).

10 b2×c3 ♖a5×d5

11 ♖g1-f3 ...

In a game Ornstein-Shamkovich
(Gausdal 1984) the chances were
equal after 11 ♖e2 0-0 12 ♖f4
♖d6 13 ♖e2 ♖f5.

11 ... ♖c8-g4

12 ♖f1-e2 0-0

13 0-0

White's chances are preferable
(Boleslavsky).

B

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c4 ♖f6
5 ♖c3 ♖c6)

6 ♖g1-f3 ...

A solid development move on
which there is a rich store of theoret-
ical and practical knowledge. But
practice has shown that it poses less
problems to Black than 6 ♖g5.

6 ... ♖c8-g4

The consistent reply: Black consolidates his pressure on d4 and permits some weakening of his Q-side, committing himself to uncompromising counterplay. White obtains better chances after 6 ... g6 7 ♖g5 ♗e4 8 cd ♗×c3 9 bc ♗×d5 10 ♗b3.

7 c4×d5 ...

The following variations promise no advantage for White:

1) Black obtains the advantage after 7 ♖e3 e6 8 h3 ♖×f3 9 ♗×f3 ♗b6 10 0-0-0 ♖b4 11 c5 ♗a5 12 ♗b5 0-0 13 ♖b1 ♗e4! 14 ♗f4 a6 15 ♗d6 ♗×d6 16 ♗×d6 e5! 17 ♗×d5 ed 18 ♖f4 ♗×c5 (Larsen-Trifunović, Belgrade 1964).

2) 7 ♖e2 e6 8 c5 ♗e4 9 h3 ♖×f3 10 ♖×f3 ♗×c3 11 bc ♖e7 with equal play.

7 ... ♗f6×d5

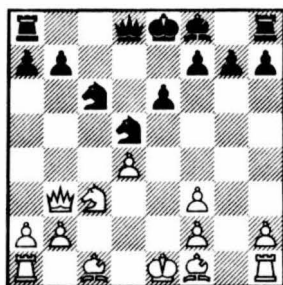
8 ♗d1-b3 ...

After 8 ♖b5 ♖c8 9 h3 ♖×f3 10 ♗×f3 e6 11 0-0 the game is level (Krause-Nimzowitsch, correspondence game 1925).

8 ... ♖g4×f3

A game Abramović-Matulović (Yugoslavia 1984) continued 8 ... ♗b6! 9 ♖e3 ♖×f3 10 gf e6 11 0-0-0 ♖e7 12 ♖b1 (12 ♖g1 0-0) 12 ... 0-0 13 d5 ed 14 ♗×d5 ♗×d5 15 ♗×d5 ♖f6! with equal chances.

9 g2×f3 e7-e6



Black needs to play very precisely as can be seen from the following continuations:

1) 9 ... ♗b6 (bad is 9 ... ♗×d4? 10 ♖b5+! or 9 ... ♗×c3? 10 ♗×b7 ♗×d4 11 bc ♗c2+ 12 ♖e2 ♖b8 13 ♗c6+ ♗d7 14 ♗×d7+ ♖×d7 15 ♖h3+ e6 16 ♖f4, after which Black's prospects look rather gloomy) 10 d5 (a game Short-Miles, Great Britain 1984, went 10 ♖e3 e6 11 0-0-0 ♖e7 12 d5 ed 13 ♖×b6 ab! — also possible is 13 ... ♗×b6 14 ♗×b6 ab 15 ♗×d5 0-0!, Jakobs-Iklicki, London 1986 — 14 ♗×d5 0-0 15 ♖g1 ♖f6 with good play for Black) 10 ... ♗d4 11 ♗d1 e5 12 de fe 13 ♖e3 ♖c5 14 b4 ♗f6 15 bc ♗×f3+ 16 ♖e2 0-0 17 cb ♗×c3 18 ♖g2 ♗c4+ 19 ♗d3. White's advantage is obvious (Shuravlev-Gutman, USSR 1972).

2) 9 ... ♗db4 10 ♖e3 ♗×d4 11 ♖×d4 ♗×d4 12 ♖b5+ ♗c6 13 0-0, and here too Black has considerable difficulties.

10 ♗b3×b7 ♗c6×d4

11 ♖f1-b5+ ♘d4×b5

12 ♜b7-c6+ ♜e8-e7

13 ♜c6×b5 ...

But not 13 ♘×b5? ♜b8 14 ♘d4 ♜d7 15 ♖c3 ♜×b2 16 ♜c4 f6 17 ♜d1 ♜f7 18 ♘b3 ♖e7 19 0-0 ♜c8, and White is doomed to lose the game (Shuravlev-Stetsko, USSR 1971).

13 ... ♜d8-d7

After 13 ... ♘×c3 14 bc ♜d5 (after 14 ... ♜d7 15 ♜b1! the advantage is on White's side, Fischer-Euwe, 1960 Olympiad) 15 ♜b1 ♜d8 16 ♖e3 ♜×b5 17 ♜×b5 Black is confronted with a difficult defence (Cortlever-Karaklajić, Wijk aan Zee 1972).

14 ♘c3×d5+ ♜d7×d5

Weaker is 14 ... ed 15 ♜b4+ (15 ♜e2+ is also good) 15 ... ♜e8 16 ♜d4, and White has a clear advantage (Fischer).

15 ♜b5×d5 e6×d5

16 ♖c1-e3 ...

A game Belyavsky-Wells (London 1985) went 16 0-0 ♜e6 17 ♜e1+ ♜f5 18 ♜d1! ♜d8 19 ♖e3 ♜d7 20 ♜ac1 with a slight advantage to White.

16 ... ♜e7-e6

In a game Rogulj-Bellon (Bucharst 1979) there followed 17 0-0-0 ♖b4! (also possible is 17 ... ♜c8+ 18 ♜b1 ♖c5 19 ♜he1 ♜d6 20 ♜d3 ♜hd8 21 ♖g5 f6! 22 ♖f4+ ♜c6 23 ♜e6+ ♜b7 24 ♜b3+ ♜a8 with equal chances) 18 ♜b1 ♜hd8 19 ♜d3 ♜d7

20 ♜c1 ♜b8 21 ♜c6+ ♜f5

22 ♜a6 ♜bb7, and Black has a secure defensive position.

III

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3)

5 ... g7-g6

This continuation is also very popular. Black's play has a kind of 'Grünfeld-Indian' approach. In a number of cases this continuation is linked with a positional pawn sacrifice. Usually the game is very complex and strategic.

The main continuation for White is now considered to be 6 ♜b3 (A). In section B we shall be analysing the variations with 6 cd.

Let us first look at some more uncommon continuations:

1) 6 ♖g5 ♖g7 7 ♘f3 (after 7 ♖×f6 ♖×f6 8 ♘×d5 ♖g7 9 ♘f3 ♘c6 Black has equal play) 7 ... ♘e4 8 cd ♘×g5 9 ♘×g5 0-0 10 ♖c4 (a game Enevoldsen-Karaklajić, Beverwijk 1967, went 10 ♜d2 ♘d7 11 ♖c4 a6 12 a4 ♜b6 13 ♘f3 ♜b4 14 ♖e2 ♘b6 15 a5 ♘c4 16 ♖×c4 ♜×c4, and Black's chances are better) 10 ... e5 11 ♘f3 ed 12 ♘×d4 ♜h4 13 ♘ce2 ♖g4 14 ♜c1 ♘d7 with equal chances (Bessenay-Marić, France 1971).

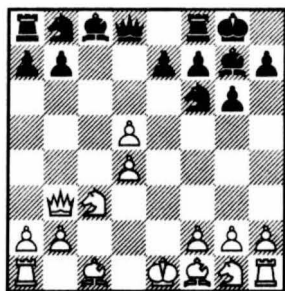
2) 6 ♘f3 ♖g7 7 ♖e2 0-0 8 0-0 ♘c6 9 h3 dc 10 ♖×c4 b6, and the game is equal (Burger-Benkö, USA 1969).

A

6 ♗d1-b3 ♖f8-g7

It is inadvisable for Black to leave the centre: 6 ... dc 7 ♖×c4 e6 8 d5 ed 9 ♗×d5 ♗×d5 10 ♖×d5 ♗e7+ 11 ♖e3 ♖g7 12 ♗f3 0-0 13 0-0 ♗c6 14 ♖fe1, enabling White to apply strong pressure in the centre. Black is therefore forced to sacrifice his central pawn in this variation.

7 c4×d5 0-0

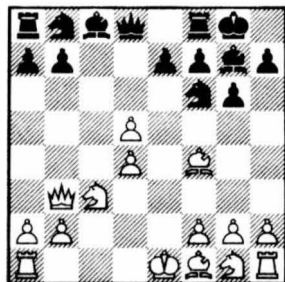


White has now three main options: 8 ♖e2 (a), 8 g3 (b) and 8 ♗ge2 (c).

Also played are:

1) 8 ♖g5 ♗a5 9 ♖×f6 ef 10 0-0-0 ♗d7 11 ♖b1 ♗b6 12 ♖d3 ♖g4 13 ♖c1 ♖h6 14 ♖c2 ♖ad8 15 h3 ♖fe8 16 ♗ge2 ♖×e2, and Black has equal play (Vasyukov-Bronstein, Kislovodsk 1968).

2) 8 ♖f4. This position results quite often from the Grünfeld-Indian Defence: 1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♗c3 d5 4 ♖f4 ♖g7 5 e3 0-0 6 ♗b3 c5 7 cd c♗ 8 ed. Now the following lines are possible:



2a) 8 ... ♗bd7 9 d6 ed 10 ♖×d6 ♖e8+, and Black has good counterplay for the sacrificed pawn (Hort).

2b) 8 ... a5! 9 ♗f3 a4 10 ♗×a4 ♗×d5 11 ♖d2 (or 11 ♖e5 ♗c6 12 ♖×g7 ♖×g7 13 ♖e2 ♗a5+ 14 ♗c3 ♖e6 with roughly equal chances) 11 ... ♗c6 12 ♖c4 ♗a5 13 ♖×a5 ♗×a5+ 14 ♗c3 ♗×c3 15 bc (Mikhalchishin-Bagirov, USSR 1979).

Black was able to obtain good counterplay after 15 ... ♖g4 16 ♖e2 ♖×f3 17 ♖×f3 e5!

2c) 8 ... e6! 9 d6 (Lputian-Weingold, USSR 1979). After 9 ... ♗h5! 10 ♖e5 f6 11 ♖g3 ♗×g3 12 hg ♗×d6 Black would have had sufficient counterplay.

3) 8 ♖d3 ♗a6 9 ♗ge2 ♗c7 10 ♗f4 b6 11 0-0 ♖b7 12 ♖c4 ♗d6, and Black wins back the pawn on favourable terms.

4) 8 ♗f3 ♗bd7 9 ♖g5 ♗b6 10 ♖×f6 (in a game Tal-Bronstein, 29th USSR Championship, 1961, Black had excellent play after 10 ♖c4 ♖f5 11 ♖d1?! ♗e4 12 0-0 ♗×c3 13 bc ♖c8) 10 ... ef!, and

the chances are roughly equal (Botvinnik).

a

8 ♖f1-e2 ♜b8-d7

In addition Black has the following possibilities:

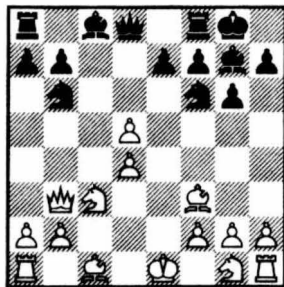
1) 8 ... b6 9 ♖f3 ♜b7 10 ♗ge2 ♜d7 11 ♖f4! (after 11 0-0 ♜d8 12 ♗f4 ♗a6 13 a4 ♜ab8 14 ♖e3 ♗c7 Black regains the pawn with ease; a game Zinn-Brümmer, GDR 1964, went 11 ♖g5 ♗a6 12 0-0 ♜fd8 13 ♜fe1 ♗xd5 14 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 15 ♜a3! ♗c7 16 ♗f4 ♜f5 17 ♜xe7 ♜d7 18 ♗fxd5!, and White's position was better) 11 ... ♜d8 12 ♜c1 ♗a6 13 ♜a3 ♖f8 14 b4, and White's position is clearly better. Boleslavsky suggests the following variation: 14 ... e6 15 de fe 16 ♖xb7 ♜xb7 17 ♜b3! ♜xg2 18 ♜xe6+ ♗g7 19 ♜g1 ♜b7 20 ♖e5 ♜f7 21 ♗f4, and White has a won position.

2) 8 ... ♗e8 9 ♗f3 ♗d6 10 ♖f4 ♖g4 11 ♜d1 ♖xf3 12 ♖xf3 ♗d7 13 0-0 ♗b6 14 ♜fe1 ♗bc4 15 ♗b5 ♜d7 16 ♗xd6 ♗xd6 17 h3 ♜fe8 18 ♖g4, and White's prospects are better (Vasyukov-Doda, Belgrade 1961).

3) 8 ... ♗a6! 9 ♖f3 (in a game Fischer-Yanofsky, Natanya 1968, White played 9 ♖g5!; after 9 ... ♜b6 10 ♜xb6 ab 11 a3 ♜d8 12 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 13 ♜d1 ♖f5 14 ♖c4 ♜ac8 15 ♖b3 b5! 16 ♗f3 b4 17 ab ♗xb4 Black had excellent

counterplay) 9 ... ♜b6 10 ♜xb6 ab 11 ♗ge2 (11 ♖f4 is answered by 11 ... ♗b4 12 ♗d2 ♖f5! with Black in a strong attacking position) 11 ... ♗b4 12 0-0 ♜d8 (or 12 ... ♖g4 13 ♖xg4 ♗xg4 14 ♖g5!, and White retains the extra pawn) 13 d6 ed (after 13 ... ♜xd6 14 ♖f4 ♜d7 15 ♖e5 White obtains a considerable positional advantage) 14 ♖g5 ♜e8 15 ♗b5!, and Black is in great difficulties (Boleslavsky).

9 ♖e2-f3 ♗d7-b6



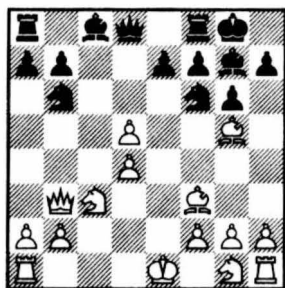
10 ♖c1-g5

At this point there are also quite a number of lines to choose from:

1) 10 ♗ge2 ♖f5 (the more favourable prospects are also with White if 10 ... ♖g4 11 ♖xg4 ♗xg4 12 a4 ♗f6 13 ♗f4 ♜d7 14 a5 ♗c8 15 0-0 ♗d6 16 ♜e1 ♗f5 — 16 ... ♜ad8, Hort, is better — 17 ♜a4, Pietzsch-Spiridonov, Sofia 1967) 11 0-0 (not bad either is 11 ♗f4 g5 12 ♗h5 ♗xh5 13 ♖xh5 e6 14 g4 ♖g6 15 de ♜xd4 with a small ad-

vantage to White) 11 ... ♔d3 12 d6 ed 13 ♗×b7 ♜b8 14 ♗f3 ♜e8 15 ♗d1 ♗a6 16 ♜e1, and White has a clear advantage (Hort–Dolmatov, Amsterdam 1980).

2) 10 ♗f4 ♗g4 11 ♗×g4 ♖×g4 12 ♖f3 ♖f6 13 d6 with a slight initiative to White. Worth noting is 10 ... e6! 11 de ♗×e6 12 ♗d1 ♖fd5, recommended by Boleslavsky, and Black has active play for his pawn.



After the move in the main variation 10 ♗g5 the following lines are possible:

1) 10 ... a5 11 a4 (in a game Grabczewsky–A. Zaitsev, Albena 1970, White had a slight advantage after 11 ♗×f6 efl 12 ♖ge2 ♗f5 13 ♗d1 ♖c4 14 b3 ♖b2 15 ♗d2 ♖d3+ 16 ♗f1 ♖b4 17 a3 ♖a6 18 h3) 11 ... ♗f5 (11 ... ♗d6 12 ♖b5 ♗b4+ 13 ♗×b4 ab 14 d6 is also possible, with double-edged play) 12 ♜d1 ♗d6 followed by ♗b4, and Black has good counterplay (Boleslavsky).

2) 10 ... ♗f5 11 ♜d1 ♗c8 (11 ... ♗d7 12 h3 h5 13 ♖ge2 ♜ad8

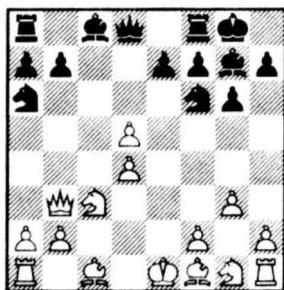
14 d6 ed 15 0-0 d5 16 ♖g3 is weaker with advantage for White, Levenfish; White also has better prospects after 11 ... a5 12 a4 ♜c8 13 ♖ge2 ♜c4 14 ♗a2 ♗d7 15 b3 ♜c7 16 ♗×f6 ♗×f6 17 ♗d2, Zinn–Spiridonov, Krakov 1964, or 11 ... ♖e8 12 ♖ge2 ♖d6 13 0-0) 12 h3 ♗c4 13 ♗×c4 ♖×c4 14 g4 (Vasyukov–Gurgenidze, 37th USSR Championship, 1969). With 14 ... ♗d7 15 ♗c1 Black's position would have been only slightly worse.

3) 10 ... ♗g4 11 ♗×f6 ♗×f3 12 ♖×f3 ef (after 12 ... ♗×f6 13 a4! White has a clear advantage) 13 0-0 ♗d7 14 ♜e1, and Black has a hard time trying to equalise.

b .

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c4 ♖f6 5 ♖c3 g6 6 ♗b3 ♗g7 7 cd 0-0) 8 g2–g3 ...

At this point Black has the choice between two lines: 8 ... ♖bd7 (1) and 8 ... e6! (2). Less customary is 8 ... ♖a6?! , e. g.:



9 ♗g2 ♗b6 10 ♗×b6 ab 11 ♖ge2 ♖b4 12 0-0 ♜d8 13 d6

♖×d6 (a game Tal–Botvinnik, USSR 1966, went 13 ... ed 14 ♖g5 ♖e8 15 a3 ♖c6 16 ♖fe1 ♖g4 17 ♖×f6 ♖×f6 18 ♖d5 with advantage to White) 14 ♖f4 ♖d7 15 ♖fd1 ♖bd5 (or 15 ... ♖fd5 16 a3 ♖×f4 17 ♖×f4 ♖c2 18 ♖ac1 ♖×d4 19 ♖fd5 with a clear advantage to White, Spassky–Petrosian, match 1966) 16 ♖e5, and White's pressure is quite strong (Spassky–Petrosian, match 1966).

1

8 ... ♖b8–d7

9 ♖f1–g2 ♖d7–b6

A game Makarychev–Tseitlin (USSR 1974) proceeded 9 ... ♖e8? 10 ♖ge2 ♖d6 11 ♖f4 with a small advantage to White.

10 ♖g1–e2 ♖c8–f5

11 ♖e2–f4 ...

Worth considering is 11 0-0 ♖d7 (11 ... ♖d3 with the idea 12 ... ♖c4 is probably better) 12 a4 (a game Fuchs–Bronstein, Berlin 1968, continued 12 ♖e1 h6 13 a4 ♖ad8 14 d6 ♖×d6 15 ♖b5 ♖d7 16 ♖×a7, and White has a minimal advantage) 12 ... ♖h3 (or 12 ... ♖d3 13 d6 ed 14 a5 ♖c4 15 ♖b4 with roughly better prospects for White) 13 ♖×h3 ♖×h3 14 ♖f4, and White's position is preferable.

11 ... h7–h6

In a game Matanović–Vukić (Yugoslavia 1967) Black had serious difficulties after 11 ... a5? 12 0-0 g5 13 ♖fe2 h6 14 ♖e1 ♖c8 15 h3.

12 0-0 g6–g5

13 ♖f4–e2 ♖d8–d7

14 f2–f4 g5–g4

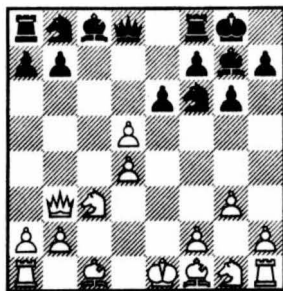
15 a2–a4

The struggle is double-edged.

2

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c4 ♖f6 5 ♖c3 g6 6 ♖b3 ♖g7 7 cd 0-0 8 g3)

8 ... e7–e6!?



A relatively new continuation. Black sacrifices a pawn in the centre for a fast opening. In this manner he intends to exploit White's lack of development on K-side.

9 d5×e6 ...

After 9 ♖g2 ♖×d5 10 ♖ge2 ♖c6 the chances are equal (Gipslis–Zhelesnyev, USSR 1961).

9 ... ♖b8–c6!?

The consistent implementation of Black's plan: 9 ... ♖×e6 10 ♖×b7 ♖bd7 also deserves consideration.

10 e6×f7+ ♖g8–h8

11 ♖g1–e2 ♖d8–e7

12 ♖c1–e3 ♖f6–g4

13 ♖e1–d2 ...

After 13 ♖d5 ♜×f7 Black has excellent play.

- 13 ... ♖c8-e6
 14 d4-d5 ♖e6×f7
 15 ♖f1-h3 ♖g4-e5
 16 ♖a1-d1

Thus went a game Gheorghiu-Johannessen, 1966 Olympiad). Black was able to obtain equal play after 16 ... ♖a5.

C

- (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c4 ♖f6
 5 ♖c3 g6 6 ♜b3 ♖g7 7 cd 0-0)
 8 ♖g1-e2 ♖f8-e8

After 8 ... ♖bd7 White can play 9 g3 and then transpose into the variations just analysed. Not bad either is 9 ♖f4 ♖b6 10 ♖e2 ♖g4 11 ♖×g4 ♖×g4 12 h3 ♖h6 13 g4! ♖×d4 14 ♖h5 ♖f5 15 gf gh 16 ♖h6 after which White has the slightly more active play (Anikayev-Seoyev, USSR 1979).

- 9 g2-g3 ...

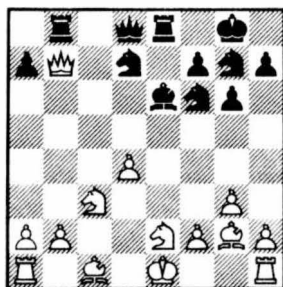
9 ♖f4 deserves consideration. Alternatively 9 ♖g5 e6 10 de ♖×e6 11 ♜×b7 ♖bd7 12 0-0-0 ♜a5 13 ♜b5 ♜×b5 14 ♖×b5 ♖×a2 and Black has good compensation for the pawn (Boleslavsky).

- 9 ... e7-e6
 10 d5×e6 ...

After 10 ♖g2 ed 11 ♖e3 or 10 d6 ♜×d6 11 ♖g2 ♖c6 12 0-0 ♖d5 the chances are equal (M. Tseitlin-Bukhman, Leningrad 1973).

- 10 ... ♖c8×e6
 11 ♜b3×b7 ♖b8-d7

- 12 ♖f1-g2 ♖a8-b8



- 13 ♜b7-a6 ...

Other possibilities are:

- 1) 13 ♜f3 ♖g4 14 ♜f4 (14 ♜d3 ♖e5) 14 ... ♜a5 15 f3 ♖d5 16 ♜d2 ♖×c3 with black superiority.
 2) 13 ♜×a7 ♖c4 14 ♖f3 ♖d5 15 ♖×d5 (15 ♜a4 ♖7b6!) 15 ... ♖×e2+ 16 ♖×e2 ♖×d5, and White is in serious trouble.

- 13 ... ♖d7-b6

There can now follow: 14 b3 ♖fd5 15 0-0 ♖×c3 16 ♖×c3 ♜×d4 17 ♖f4 (after 17 ♖b2 ♜d2 18 ♖ab1 ♖×c3 19 ♖fd1 ♜c2 20 ♖dc1 ♜×b2 21 ♖×b2 ♖×b2 the advantage is on Black's side) 17 ... ♜×c3 18 ♖×b8 ♖×b8 19 ♜×a7 ♖e5 20 ♖ac1 ♜b4. This position is regarded as approximately equal by Botvinnik, while Boleslavsky gives Black the edge.

B

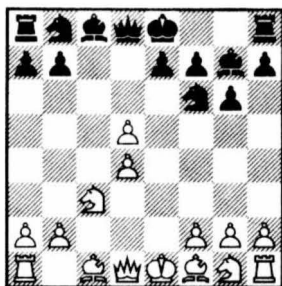
- (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c4 ♖f6
 5 ♖c3 g6)
 6 c4×d5 ...

This continuation poses less prob-

lems to Black than 6 ♘b3, but here too he needs to give careful consideration to the opening stage.

6 ... ♖f6×d5

Another popular reply is 6 ... ♖g7!, e. g.:



1) 7 ♖c4 0-0 8 ♗ge2 ♖bd7 9 ♖f4 ♖b6 (in a game Padevsky-Bilek, 1974 Olympiad, White had a minimal advantage after 9 ... ♗e8 10 0-0 ♖d6 11 ♖b3 ♖b6 12 ♖e3) 10 ♖b3 ♖f5 (after 10 ... ♗d6!?) 11 0-0 ♖d7 12 ♖e1 a5 13 a4 ♖fc8 14 h3 h6 15 ♖e5 ♖c4 16 ♗e2 the advantage is, without any doubt, with White, Tal-Wade, Tallinn 1971) 11 0-0 ♖c8 (also after 11 ... ♗d7 12 ♖e1 a5 13 a4 ♖fd8 14 h4 h5 15 ♗e2 White has an advantage in development, Szabó-Kostro, Luchačovice 1971) 12 ♖e1 ♖d6 13 h3 ♖c8 14 ♖d2 ♖fe4 15 ♖×e4 ♖×e4 (Tseitlin-Rytov, USSR 1972). After 16 ♖c3 White maintains a small advantage.

2) 7 ♖b5+ ♖bd7 8 d6 0-0 (also possible is 8 ... ed 9 ♗e2+ ♗e7 10 ♖f4 ♗×e2+ 11 ♖×e2 ♗e7!, with approximate equality, Nunn-

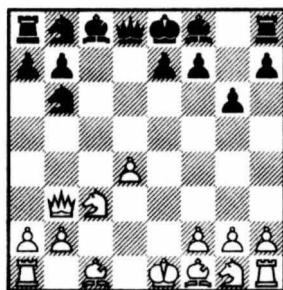
Stean, Hastings 1979/80) 9 de ♗×e7+ 10 ♖ge2 a6 11 ♖d3 b5 12 0-0 ♖b7 13 ♖g5 (or 13 a3 ♖fe8 with equality, Minić-Bronstein, Vinokovci 1970) 13 ... ♖b6 14 ♗d2 ♖fe8 15 ♖g3 ♗d7 16 ♖ce2 ♖e4 17 ♖×e4 ♖×e4 18 b3 ♖d5, and Black has equalised (Bronstein-Gurgenidze, USSR 1972).

After 6 ... ♖×d5 White can choose between two main continuations: 7 ♗b3 (a) and 7 ♖c4 (b).

a

7 ♗d1-b3 ♖d5-b6

A game Tal-Pohla (Viliandi 1972) went 7 ... ♖×c3 8 ♖c4! e6 9 bc ♖c6 10 ♖f3 ♖g7 11 ♖a3 ♖f8 12 0-0 ♖×a3 13 ♗×a3 ♗e7 14 ♗c1!, and White puts pressure on the dark squares.



8 ♖f1-b5+ ...

Worth considering is 8 d5! A game Sveshnikov-S. Garcia (Cienfuegos 1979) continued 8 ... ♖g7 9 ♖e3 0-0 10 ♖d1 ♖a6?! (10 ... ♖d7) 11 ♖×a6 ba 12 ♖ge2 ♖d7 13 0-0 ♖b8 14 ♖f4 ♖c8 15 ♖d4 ♖g4 16 f3 ♖d7 17 ♖fe1 ♖×c3!l

18 bc ♖a4 19 ♜a3 ♖×d1 20 ♗c6 ♜d7 21 ♖×d1 ♗e8 22 ♜b3 with strong pressure from White.

8 ... ♖c8-d7

In a game Velimirović–Vukić (Yugoslavia 1970) Black played 8 ... ♗8d7, and White seized the initiative after 9 a4 a5 10 h4 ♖g7 11 h5 0-0 12 hg hg 13 ♗ge2 e5 14 ♗e4.

9 ♗g1-f3 ♖f8-g7

10 ♗f3-e5 0-0

After 11 ♗×d7 ♗8×d7 12 ♖e3 ♗f6 13 0-0 ♗fd5! (13 ... e6 14 d5!) 14 ♗×d5 ♗×d5 Black has a solid position. The chances are equal. Bearing this in mind the new continuation 8 d5! is of great interest.

b

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c4 ♗f6 5 ♗c3 g6 6 cd ♗×d5)

7 ♖f1-c4 ...

A check with the bishop does not get White anywhere: 7 ♖b5+ ♖d7 8 ♜b3 ♗b6 9 ♗f3 ♖g7, and Black completes his development successfully. In a game Karpov–Miles (Amsterdam 1981) Black answered 7 ♖b5+ with 7 ... ♗c6. After 8 ♜a4 ♗×c3 9 bc ♖g7 10 ♗f3 0-0 11 0-0 ♖e6 (better is 11 ... ♗a5!) 12 ♖×c6 bc 13 ♖a3 ♜c7 14 ♖fe1 White's chances were better.

7 ... ♗d5-b6

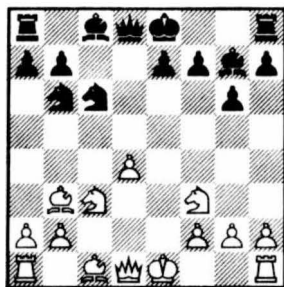
8 ♖c4-b3 ♖f8-g7

9 ♗g1-f3 ...

After 9 ♗ge2 0-0 10 0-0 ♖f5

11 d5 ♗a6 12 ♖c3 ♗c8 the chances are equal (Bisguier–Larsen, Palma de Mallorca 1971).

9 ... ♗b8-c6



There can now follow:

1) 10 0-0 e6 11 d5 ed 12 ♗×d5 ♗×d5 13 ♖×d5 0-0 14 ♖e3 ♖f6 with equal play for Black (Nunn–Stean, Hastings 1979/80).

2) 10 a4 ♗×d4 11 ♗×d4 ♜×d4 12 ♜×d4 ♖×d4 13 a5 ♗d7 14 ♗d5 ♖e5 15 0-0, and the chances are equal (Mark Tseitlin–Vorotnikov, Leningrad 1973).

System 2 c4

(1 e4 c6 2 c4)

The ideas behind the system 2 c4 are closely related to the Panov Attack, and quite often the game transposes directly into the main variation of the Panov Attack after 1 e4 c6 2 c4 d5 3 ed cd 4 d4. But a number of other variations can also arise, although, in terms of content, they may be similar to the Panov Attack. This is why we are dealing with the system 2 c4 at this point.

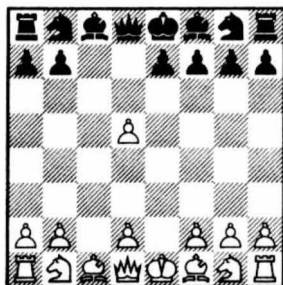
2 ... d7-d5

In addition, Black has here the following possibilities:

1) 2 ... e6! 3 c3 (after 3 d4 d5 4 cd ed 5 e5! a6 6 c3 c7 7 ge2 ?! e7 8 f4 f5 9 de3 e6 10 xe6 de6 11 d3 xe3 12 fe h4+ 13 g3 g5 Black has excellent play, Tal-Bisguier, Bled 1961; 4 c3 de 5 xe4 b4+ leads to the Slav Defence; instead of 7 ge2 !, 7 d3 ! is better) 3 ... d5 4 cd ed 5 ed cd 6 f3 f6 7 b5+ c6 (if 7 ... d7 , so 8 xd7+ bx7 9 0-0 e7 10 d4 0-0 11 b3 b6 12 g5 or also 8 b3 xb5 9 xb5+ d7 10 e5 ! with white initiative) 8 0-0 e7 9 e5 d7 10 d4 0-0 11 g5 xe5 ! 12 de e4 13 xe7 xc3 14 xd8 xd1 15 xd7 fxd8 16 e6, and White's position is preferable (Hübner-Petrosian, match 1971); even better is 11 e1 c8 12 g5 and Black has serious difficulties.

2) 2 ... e5. With this move Black steers the game in the direction of the King's Indian Defence, e. g. 3 f3 d6 4 d4 d7 5 c3 gf6 , etc. A game Tal-Nei (Pärnu 1971) went 3 d4 b4+ ? 4 d2 xd2+ 5 xd2 d6 6 c3 f6 7 f4 0-0 8 f3 ed 9 xd4 c5 10 d2 c6 11 0-0-0, and White has the initiative.

3 e4xd5 c6xd5
4 c4xd5 ...



Here the game branches off in three directions: 4 ... xd5 (I), 4 ... f6 (II) and 4 ... a6 (III).

I

4 ... d8xd5

This variation of the Caro-Kann Defence is very similar to the lines of the Scandinavian and the Sicilian Defences.

5 b1-c3 d5-d8

After 5 ... a5 6 d4 f6 7 f3 e6 8 0-0 e7 9 d4 White has fair chances to seize the initiative. A game Sax-Speelman (Skara 1980) went 5 ... d6 ?! 6 d4 f6 7 ge2 ?! (after 7 f3 e6 8 d3 c6 9 0-0 e7 10 e1 Black has a solid position) 7 ... e6 (if 7 ... d7 , so 8 f4 b6 9 g3 e5! 10 xe5 c6 11 d5 c5 12 g2 xf2+ 13 f1 d7 14 xf6 , and White keeps a marginal advantage; 7 ... g6 ?! needs testing) 8 g3 d7 9 f4 b6 10 g2 c6 11 d5 xd5 ? (better is 11 ... ed 12 0-0 b4 13 g5 bd7 14 xd5 xd5 15 xd5 0-0 16 a3 with a small advantage to White) 12 xd5 ! ed

13 0-0 ♟e7 14 ♟e5!; and Black's position is very difficult.

6 d2-d4 ♟g8-f6
7 ♟g1-f3 e7-e6

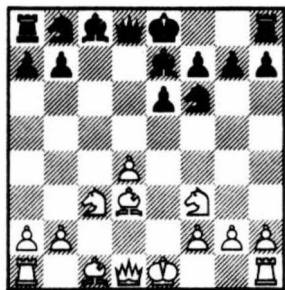
White's position is better after 7 ... ♟g4 8 h3 ♟h5 9 ♟b5+ ♟bd7 10 g4! ♟g6 11 ♟e5 a6 12 ♟×g6 hg 13 ♟e2.

In White's favour is also 7 ... ♟f5 8 ♟e5! with the threats 9 ♟b5+ or 9 ♞b3.

8 ♟f1-d3 ...

After 8 ♟c4 ♟e7 9 0-0 the game transposes into the Queen's Gambit, while 8 ... ♟b4! 9 0-0 0-0 leads to the Nimzowitsch-Indian Defence.

8 ... ♟f8-e7



We now have a situation which is characteristic of a number of variations of the Queen's Gambit. The following is an example: 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♟g5 ♟c6 11 ♞e1 b6 12 a3 ♟b7 13 ♟c2 ♞e8 (a game Sax-Haág, Budapest 1976, went 13 ... ♞c8 14 ♞d3 g6 15 ♞ac1 ♟d5 16 ♟h6 ♞e8 17 ♟a4 with white initiative) 14 ♞d3 g6 15 ♞ad1 ♞c8 16 ♟b3 ♟d5 17 ♟e4 ♟g7 18 ♟c1! White is successful in retain-

ing the tension with prospects for an attack on the K-side (Balashov-Hort, Vinkovci 1976).

II

(1 e4 c6 2 c4 d5 3 ed cd 4 cd)
4 ... ♟g8-f6

The most common continuation. Black wants to recapture the d5-pawn on more favourable terms than in line I. But White is able to make it difficult for his opponent to implement his plan with either of two main lines: 5 ♞a4+ (A) and 5 ♟b5+ (B). Another possibility is 5 ♟c3. After 5 ... ♟×d5 6 ♟c4 (or 6 ♟f3 ♟c6 7 ♟b5 e6 8 0-0 ♟e7 9 d4 0-0 10 ♞e1 ♟d7 11 ♟×d5 ed 12 ♟f4 ♟g4 13 ♟×c6 bc 14 ♞c1 ♞e8 with equal chances, Keres-Filip, Moscow 1967; in a game Sokolov-Karpov, match 1987, Black answered 6 ♟f3 with 6 ... ♟×c3 7 bc g6 8 h4?! —better is 8 d4 — 8 ... ♟g7 9 h5 ♟c6 10 ♞b1 ♞c7 and obtained an excellent position) 6 ... ♟b6 7 ♟b3 ♟c6 8 ♟f3 e6 (favourable for White is 8 ... e5! 9 0-0 ♟g4? 10 ♞e1 ♟d6 11 ♟×e5! or 8 ... ♟d4 9 ♟×d4 ♞×d4 10 d3 ♟g4 11 ♞c2 ♞d8 12 ♟e3) 9 0-0 ♟e7 10 d4 0-0 11 a3 (worth noting is 11 ♞d3 ♟f6 12 ♟e3 ♟d5 13 ♟e4 with some initiative to White) 11 ... ♟f6 12 ♟c3 ♟d5 Black has a sound position (Sax-Lein, Amsterdam 1979).

It should be mentioned that 5 ...

g6?1 in answer to 5 ♖c3 is weaker. After 6 ♜c4 ♜g7 7 ♜ge2 (in a game Kalinichev–Tischbierek, Berlin 1986, White obtained a slight superiority after 7 ♜f3 0-0 8 0-0 ♜bd7 9 d3 ♜b6 10 ♜b3 ♜f5 11 ♜f4 ♜c8 12 ♜e1 ♜fd7 13 ♜g5 ♜c5 14 ♜a3) 7 ... 0-0 8 0-0 ♜bd7 (8 ... b6. 9 ♜f4 ♜b7 10 d4 ♜a6 11 ♜b3 ♜c7 12 a4 and White has a clear advantage) 9 ♜f4 ♜b6 10 ♜b3 ♜f5 (or 10 ... ♜g4 11 f3 ♜f5 12 g4! ♜c8 13 d4, and White keeps the extra pawn, Cafferty–Ermenkov, Albená 1971) 11 d4 ♜c8 12 ♜e1 ♜d6 13 h3 ♜c8 White has the better play (Tseitlin–Rytov, Leningrad 1972).

A

5 ♜d1–a4+ ♜b8–d7

5 ... ♜d7? 6 ♜b3 ♜a6 7 d4 also merits attention (in Black's favour is 7 ♜×a6 ba 8 ♜c3 ♜b8 9 ♜d1 ♜b5! or 7 ♜×b7? ♜c5 8 ♜b4 e6!) 7 ... ♜b6 8 ♜c4 ♜c8 9 ♜c3 ♜b4 10 ♜e2 with double-edged play and roughly equal chances (Botvinnik).

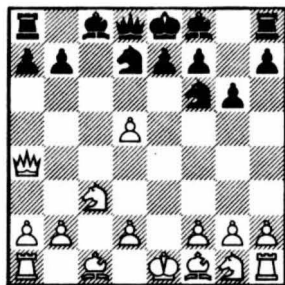
6 ♜b1–c3 g7–g6

(see diagram)

7 d2–d4 ...

Other possibilities are:

1) 7 ♜f3! ♜g7 8 ♜b3 0-0 9 ♜c4 ♜c5? 10 ♜a3 b6 11 0-0 ♜b7 12 d4 ♜ce4 13 ♜×e4 ♜×e4 14 ♜f4! with initiative to White (Kusmin–Dolmatov, USSR 1980).



2) 7 g3 ♜g7 8 ♜g2 0-0 9 ♜ge2 (9 d4 ♜b6!) 9 ... ♜b6 (also interesting is 9 ... ♜c5! 10 ♜c8! or 9 ... e6! 10 ♜f4 ♜b6 11 ♜b3 ed, Musatov–Korchmar, USSR 1968, and in both cases Black has promising counterplay; instead of 10 ♜f4, 10 de ♜c5! 11 ef+ ♜×f7 12 ♜c4 ♜d3+ is not better, but the game is equal after 10 d6) 10 ♜b3 a5 11 ♜f4 a4 12 ♜b5 ♜d7 13 ♜b4 ♜e8 14 0-0 ♜f8 15 ♜d4 ♜f5 16 ♜e5 ♜g7, and Black has dangerous counterplay promising him the better prospects (Suetin–Gurgenidze, Kislovodsk 1972).

3) 7 d6?! ed 8 ♜f3 ♜g7 9 ♜e2 0-0 10 d4 ♜b6 11 ♜d1 ♜bd5 12 0-0 h6 13 ♜×d5 ♜×d5 14 ♜b3 ♜e7, and Black's chances are preferable (Matulović–Udovčić, Yugoslavia 1963).

4) 7 h4? ♜g7 8 h5 ♜×h5 9 g4 ♜f6 10 g5 ♜g8 11 d4 ♜f8 12 ♜e3 ♜b6 13 ♜b3 ♜f5, and Black's prospects are again clearly better (Littleton–Filip, Praia da Rocha 1969).

5) 7 g4? ♜g7 8 g5 ♜h5 9 ♜ge2

0-0 10 ♖g3 e6 11: ♖×h5 gh
12 ♗h4 ♖e5 13 ♜g2 ♖g6, and
White has considerable difficulties
(Gurevich–Rytov, USSR 1967).

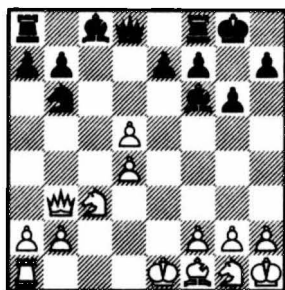
7 ... ♜f8–g7

8 ♗a4–b3 0-0

After 8 ... ♖b6 9 ♜b5+ ♜d7
10 ♖ge2 White stands better.

9 ♜c1–g5 ♖d7–b6

10 ♜g5×f6 ♜g7×f6



The game has transposed into the Grünfeld-Indian Defence (1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 d5 4 ♜f4 ♜g7 5 e3 0-0 6 ♗b3 c5 7 cd cd 8 ed ♖bd7 9 ♜g5 ♖b6 10 ♜×f6 ♜×f6). Finally the move 10 ... ef deserves consideration for transferring the knight to d6.

A game Larsen–Karpov (Montreal 1979) continued 11 ♖f3 ♜g7 (11 ... e6 12 d6) 12 ♜e2 e6! 13 de ♜×e6 14 ♗b5 a6 15 ♗b4 (15 ♗a5 ♖d5!) 15 ... ♖d5 16 ♗×b7 ♜b8 17 ♗×a6 ♜×b2 18 ♖×d5 ♗×d5 19 0-0 ♜a8 20 ♗d3 ♜a×a2 21 ♜×a2 ♗×a2 22 ♜e1 ♜f8 23 ♜f1!, and White has a small advantage, although Black has sufficient defensive resources.

B

(1 e4 c6 2 c4 d5 3 ed cd 4 cd ♖f6)
5 ♜f1–b5+ ...

At this point Black can choose between two lines: 5 ... ♖bd7 (a) and 5 ... ♜d7 (b).

a

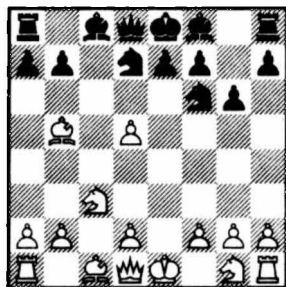
5 ... ♖b8–d7

This position has occurred with increasing frequency in recent years.

6 ♖b1–c3 ...

6 ♖f3 is followed by 6 ... a6!

6 ... g7–g6



Often, 6 ... a6 is also played, giving rise to the following variations:

1) 7 ♗a4 g6 (or 7 ... ♜b8 8 ♜×d7+ ♜×d7 9 ♗f4! g6 10 ♖f3 ♜g7 11 0-0 0-0 12 d4 ♜f5 13 ♗h4! ♖×d5 14 ♜h6, and White has a marginal advantage; if 9 ♗b3 b5 10 d4 b4 11 ♜f4 ♜c8 the chances are roughly equal; White has no superiority after 12 d6 ed 13 ♗×d6 ♜c6!) 8 ♖f3 ♜g7 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♜×d7 ♗×d7 (after 10 ... ♜×d7 11 ♗b3 ♗c7 12 d4 ♜ad8 13 ♜g5 h6 14 ♜h4 ♜c8 15 ♜fe1

White has strong pressure in a correspondence game, Yevdokimov-Gor-
enstein, 1962) 11 ♖×d7 ♘×d7
12 ♖e1 ♖fe8 13 d4 ♖ad8 14 ♘g5
♘f5 15 ♘×f6 ♘×f6 16 ♘e5 h5
17 h3 ♙g7 18 ♖ad1 h4 19 ♘g4
♘×g4 20 hg with slightly better
play for White (Tringov-Pfleger,
Moscow 1977).

2) 7 ♘a4? b5 8 ♘c2 ♘b6 9 ♘f3
♘b×d5 10 d4 e6 11 0-0 ♘e7
12 ♘g5, and the chances are equal
(Day-Bordonada, Peking 1974).

3) 7 ♘×d7+? ♖×d7 8 ♖b3
♖g4 9 ♘ge2 b5 10 0-0 e6 11 d4
♘d6, and Black has no difficulties
(Varnusz-Flesch, Hungary 1963).

7 d2-d4 ...

Worth noting is 7 ♘f3 ♘g7 8 d6
ed 9 ♖e2+ ♖e7 10 d4 with
slightly more favourable chances for
White.

7 ... ♘f8-g7
8 d5-d6 e7×d6

In a game Sax-Boronada (1974
Olympiad) White obtained a small
advantage after 8 ... e6 9 ♘f3 0-0
10 0-0 a6 11 ♘e2.

9 ♖d1-e2+ ...

9 ♘f4 can be considered.

9 ... ♖d8-e7
10 ♘c1-f4 ♖e7×e2+
11 ♘b5×e2 ♙e8-e7

A game Tringov-Skembris (Asen-
ovgrad 1986) continued 12 ♘f3
♘b6 13 ♘ge2 ♘e6! 14 0-0 ♙d7
with equal play for Black.

b

(1 e4 c6 2 c4 d5 3 ed cd 4 cd ♘f6
5 ♘b5+)

5 ... ♘c8-d7
6 ♘b5-c4 ♖d8-c7
7 d2-d3 ...

Naturally not 7 ♖b3? b5, after
which Black wins.

With 7 ♘b3 ♘×d5 8 ♘c3
♘×c3 9 bc ♘c6 10 ♘f3 g6 the
chances are equal (Botvinnik).

7 ... b7-b5!?
8 ♘c4-b3 a7-a5
9 a2-a3 ♘b8-a6
10 ♘b1-c3 g7-g6
11 ♘g1-f3 ♘f8-g7
12 0-0 0-0

A game Gusseinov-Vdovin (USSR
1980), continued 13 ♖e1 b4 14 ab
ab 15 ♘e4, and White had a slight
edge.

III

(1 e4 c6 2 c4 d5 3 ed cd 4 cd)

4 ... a7-a6

Black radically prevents the varia-
tions with ♘f1-b5+, but he loses
valuable time. This gives White an
opening advantage.

5 ♘b1-c3 ♘g8-f6
6 ♖d1-a4+ ...

Also good is 6 ♖b3 g6 (maybe
6 ... ♘bd7 is better; after 7 ♘e2
♘c5 8 ♖c4 e6 9 ♘f3 ed 10 ♘×d5
♘e6 the game is roughly equal)
7 ♘ge2 ♘g7 8 ♘f4 0-0 9 ♘e2
♘bd7 10 0-0 b5 (Keres-Vukić, Sar-
ajevo 1972). By playing 11 a4! White

was able to maintain his advantage. It should be mentioned that 6 d4 ♖×d5 7 ♜c4 is favourable for White.

6 ... ♗b8-d7
7 g2-g3 ...

In a game Randvir-Kotov (Pärnu 1947) Black had equal play after 7 ♖f3 g6 8 d4 ♜g7 9 d6 ed 10 ♜f4 0-0! 11 ♜e2 ♞e8 12 0-0 b5.

7 ... g7-g6
8 ♜f1-g2 ♜f8-g7
9 d2-d4 0-0
10 ♖g1-e2 ♖f6-e8

In Dückstein-Müller (Vienna 1966) the game continued 11 0-0 ♖d6 12 ♜f4 with strong white pressure in the centre.

The variations mentioned show that the move 2 c4! confronts Black with some problems, e. g. after 2 ... d5 3 ed cd 4 cd ♖f6 5 ♜b5+, it is not easy for Black to equalise the game.

Chapter 3

Closed system

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5

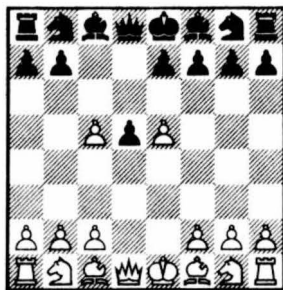
The move 3 e5 introduces the closed system, one of the first to find wide application in practice and to be analysed theoretically. There arises a pawn formation characteristic of the French Defence, the difference being that Black's light-squared

bishop is transferred to an active position on f5 rather than being hemmed in. This circumstance is of greater importance than the slight delay of the counterplay in the centre with c7-c5. Currently, White's strategic ideas are very extensive in scope. Nevertheless, Black can obtain equal play each time if he plays with precision.

3 ... ♜c8-f5

The most logical and best way for Black.

If 3 ... c5! the following variations can arise after 4 dc:

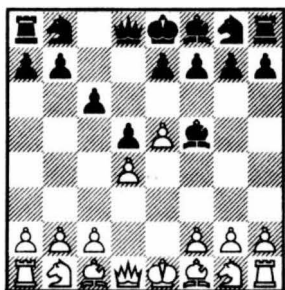


1) 4 ... ♖c6 5 ♜b5 (weaker is 5 ♖f3 ♜g4 6 ♜b5 ♞a5+ 7 ♖c3 e6 8 ♜e3 ♖e7 9 ♜d2 ♞c7 10 ♜e2 a6 11 0-0 ♖g6, and Black even has the slightly better chances, Spassky-Kotov, 22nd USSR Championship, 1955) 5 ... ♞a5+ 6 ♖c3 e6 7 ♜e3 ♜d7 8 ♖f3 (also good is 8 ♜×c6 ♜×c6 9 ♖f3 ♜×c5 10 ♜×c5 ♞×c5 11 ♞d4, and White controls the dark squares in the centre) 8 ... ♖×e5 (or 8 ... ♖ge7 9 a3 ♖g6 10 ♜×c6 ♜×c6 11 ♜d4 with positional advantage

for White) to 9 $\text{d}\times\text{e}5$ $\text{d}\times\text{b}5$ 10 $\text{c}\text{h}5$ $\text{g}6$ 11 $\text{d}\times\text{g}6$ $\text{d}\text{f}6$ 12 $\text{c}\text{h}4$ $\text{d}\text{e}4$ 13 $\text{d}\times\text{f}8$, and White's advantage is incontestable (Boleslavsky).

2) 4 ... $\text{e}6$ 5 $\text{d}\text{e}3$ (if 5 $\text{c}\text{g}4$ $\text{d}\text{d}7$ 6 $\text{d}\text{f}3$ $\text{d}\text{e}7$ 7 $\text{d}\text{g}5$ $\text{h}6$ 8 $\text{d}\times\text{e}7$ $\text{c}\text{h}\times\text{e}7$ 9 $\text{d}\text{c}3$ $\text{c}\text{h}\times\text{c}5$ 10 0-0-0 $\text{a}6$ 11 $\text{b}1$ $\text{d}\text{b}6$ or 5 $\text{d}\text{c}3$ $\text{d}\text{c}6$ 6 $\text{d}\text{f}4$ $\text{d}\text{g}e7$ 7 $\text{d}\text{f}3$ $\text{d}\text{g}6$ 8 $\text{d}\text{e}3?$ 9 $\text{d}\text{g}\times\text{e}5$ 9 $\text{d}\times\text{e}5$ $\text{d}\times\text{e}5$ 10 $\text{c}\text{h}5$ — 10 $\text{c}\text{d}4?$ — 10 ... $\text{d}\text{c}6$ 11 0-0-0 $\text{d}\text{e}7$ 12 $\text{f}4$ $\text{g}6$ and Black has equal play; thus went two games, Tal–Botvinnik, match 1961) 5 ... $\text{d}\text{e}7$ (or 5 ... $\text{d}\text{c}6$ 6 $\text{d}\text{b}5$ 7 $\text{c}\text{a}5+$ 7 $\text{d}\text{c}3$ with white advantage) 6 $\text{c}3$ $\text{d}\text{f}5$ 7 $\text{d}\text{d}4$ $\text{c}\text{c}7$ 8 $\text{d}\text{d}3$ $\text{d}\times\text{c}5$ 9 $\text{d}\times\text{c}5$ $\text{c}\text{h}\times\text{c}5$ 10 $\text{d}\times\text{f}5$ ef 11 $\text{d}\text{f}3$ $\text{d}\text{c}6$ 12 0-0 0-0 13 $\text{d}\text{b}2$, and White has a tangible positional advantage (Boleslavsky).

It should be mentioned that after 3 ... $\text{e}6$ there arises a system of the French Defence, but with the rather unpromising move 3 ... $\text{c}7$ – $\text{c}6?$



After 3 ... $\text{d}\text{f}5$ White has a great number of possible lines available of which 4 $\text{d}\text{d}3$ (I), 4 $\text{d}\text{c}3$ (II), 4 $\text{d}\text{e}2$

(III), 4 $\text{c}4$ (IV) and 4 $\text{h}4$ (V) we shall discuss here.

But first let us look at a number of other lines:

1) 4 $\text{c}3$ $\text{e}6$ 5 $\text{d}\text{e}3$ (or 5 $\text{d}\text{e}2$ $\text{c}5$ 6 $\text{d}\text{e}3$ $\text{d}\text{c}6$ 7 $\text{f}4$ $\text{c}\text{b}6!$ with excellent play for Black, Iljin–Genevsky) 5 ... $\text{c}\text{b}6$ (interesting is 5 ... $\text{c}5!$? 6 $\text{d}\text{c}6$ 7 $\text{d}\text{b}5$; after 5 ... $\text{d}\text{d}7$ 6 $\text{d}\text{d}2$ $\text{d}\text{e}7$ 7 $\text{f}4$ $\text{f}6$ 8 $\text{d}\text{g}\text{f}3$ fe 9 $\text{d}\times\text{e}5$ $\text{d}\times\text{e}5$ 10 fe $\text{d}\text{g}6$ 11 $\text{c}\text{h}5$ $\text{c}\text{b}6$ 12 $\text{b}4$ $\text{d}\text{e}7$ 13 $\text{d}\text{e}2$ 0-0 the game is equalised, Saichik–Tal, Tbilisi 1986) 6 $\text{c}\text{b}3$ $\text{d}\text{d}7$ 7 $\text{d}\text{d}2$ $\text{a}5$ 8 $\text{c}\text{h}\times\text{b}6$ $\text{d}\times\text{b}6$ 9 $\text{a}4$ $\text{d}\text{e}7$ 10 $\text{f}4$ $\text{d}\text{d}7$ 11 $\text{d}\text{e}2$ $\text{d}\text{g}6$ 12 $\text{d}\text{f}2$ $\text{h}5$ 13 $\text{d}\text{g}\text{f}3$ $\text{d}\text{f}5$ 14 0-0 $\text{d}\text{e}7$ 15 $\text{g}3$ $\text{f}6!$ with equal play for Black (Gurgenidze–Bagirov, USSR 1981).

2) 4 $\text{f}4$ $\text{c}5$ 5 $\text{d}\text{f}3$ $\text{d}\text{h}6$ 6 $\text{d}\text{e}2$ $\text{c}\text{b}6$ 7 0-0 $\text{e}6$ 8 $\text{c}3$ $\text{d}\text{c}6$ 9 $\text{d}\text{h}1$ cd 10 $\text{d}\times\text{d}4$ $\text{d}\text{c}5$ 11 $\text{d}\times\text{f}5$ $\text{d}\times\text{f}5$ 12 $\text{d}\text{d}3$ $\text{g}6$, and Black has the upper hand.

3) 4 $\text{d}\text{f}3$ $\text{e}6$ 5 $\text{d}\text{d}3$ $\text{d}\text{e}7$ 6 0-0 $\text{d}\text{d}7$ 7 $\text{c}3$ $\text{d}\times\text{d}3$ 8 $\text{c}\text{h}\times\text{d}3$ $\text{d}\text{g}6$ 9 $\text{d}\text{e}1$ $\text{d}\text{e}7$ 10 $\text{d}\text{e}3$ 0-0 11 $\text{d}\text{b}2$ $\text{c}5$, and Black has nothing to worry about (Matanović–Milić, Yugoslavia 1955).

4) 4 $\text{g}4?$ $\text{d}\text{e}4!$ (also possible is 4 ... $\text{d}\text{d}7$ 5 $\text{c}4$ $\text{e}6$ 6 $\text{d}\text{c}3$ $\text{d}\text{e}7$ 7 $\text{c}5?$ $\text{b}6$ 8 $\text{b}4$ $\text{a}5$ 9 $\text{d}\text{a}4$ $\text{d}\text{c}8$ 10 $\text{d}\text{b}1$ ab 11 $\text{d}\times\text{b}4$ bc 12 dc $\text{c}\text{c}7$, and Black's chances are better, Bronstein–Petrosian, 27th USSR Championship, 1959) 5 $\text{f}3$ $\text{d}\text{g}6$ 6 $\text{h}4$ $\text{h}5$ 7 $\text{d}\text{d}3$ (7 $\text{e}6?$ $\text{c}\text{d}6!$ 8 $\text{e}\text{f}+$ $\text{d}\times\text{f}7$ is

in Black's favour, Alekhine) 7 ... ♗×d3 8 ♖×d3 e6 (8 ... hg7 9 e6!) 9 g5 ♗e7, and Black's chances are clearly better (Filip).

I

4 ♗f1-d3 ...

One of the oldest and most tested continuations. White immediately forces the exchange of the light-squared bishops and is aiming for quick development.

This, however, causes the weakening of the light squares in White's camp, which promises Black comfortable and equal play.

4 ... ♗f5×d3

Unfavourable is 4 ... ♗g6? 5 e6 ♗d6 6 ef+ ♗×f7 7 ♗f3 ♗d7 8 0-0 followed by 9 ♖e1 (Richter-Engels, Wiesbaden 1924) or 4 ... e6 5 ♗×f5 ef 6 ♗e2 ♗a6 7 0-0 ♗c7 8 b3 ♗e7 9 ♗a3! (Vasilchuk-Bronstein, Moscow 1961).

5 ♗d1×d3 e7-e6

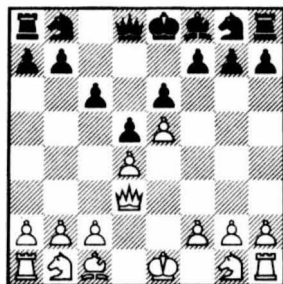
In Ufimtsev-Ravkin (USSR 1961) White exerted strong pressure in the centre after 5 ... ♗a5+ 6 ♗c3 ♗a6? (6 ... e6) 7 e6! ♗×d3 8 ef+ ♗×f7 9 cd e6 10 f4.

(see diagram)

6 ♗b1-c3 ...

Other possibilities are:

1) 6 ♗e2 c5 (not bad either is 6 ... ♗b6 7 0-0 ♗a6 8 ♗d1 c5 9 c3 ♗c6 10 ♗d2 cd 11 cd ♗d3 with good play for Black, Atkins-Capablanca, London 1922) 7 c3 ♗c6



8 0-0 ♗ge7 9 f4 cd 10 cd h5, and Black has a marginal advantage (Vestol-van Scheltinga, 1952 Olympiad).

2) 6 ♗f3 ♗a5+ (also good is 6 ... ♗b6 7 0-0 ♗a6! 8 ♗b3 ♗d7 with equal chances) 7 ♗bd2 ♗a6 8 c4 ♗d7 9 0-0 ♗e7 10 ♗e1 h5 11 cd ♗×d3 12 ♗×d3 cd with equal chances (Stoltz-Flohr, Saltsjöbaden 1948).

3) 6 f4 ♗a5+! 7 c3 ♗a6 8 ♗d1 c5 9 ♗e2 ♗c6 10 ♗d2 cd 11 cd ♗d3, and Black stands better (Boleslavsky).

In all cases Black has good chances to obtain play on the light squares.

6 ... ♗d8-b6

7 ♗g1-e2 ♗b6-a6!

A well-known game Nimzowitsch-Capablanca (New York 1927) proceeded 7 ... c5 8 dc ♗×c5 9 0-0 ♗e7 10 ♗a4! ♗c6 11 ♗×c5 ♗×c5 12 ♗c3 ♗c7 13 f4 ♗f5, and here, instead of playing 14 c3? ♗c6 15 ♖ad1 g6!, which leaves Black the better chances, White should have continued 14 ♗f2! h5

15 ♖ac1 ♗c6 16 c4!, and the centre is opened in his favour.

8 ♗e2-f4 ...

8 ♗h3? is best answered by Black with 8 ... ♗e7!, by which he thwarts White's attempts to obtain the initiative on the K-side.

8 ... ♗a6×d3

9 ♗f4×d3 ♗b8-d7

10 ♗c1-e3 ♗g8-e7

11 f2-f4 ♗e7-f5

12 ♗e3-f2 h7-h5

13 ♖e1-e2 b7-b6

14 b2-b4 a7-a5

15 a2-a3

The game is even (Boleslavsky).

II

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 ♗f5)

4 ♗b1-c3 ...

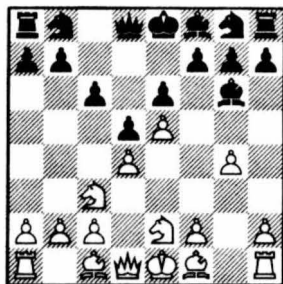
This move is one of the modern continuations the theory of which is developing fast. As a rule there arises a sharp 'irrational' game with chances for both sides.

4 ... e7-e6

If 4 ... h5?! 5 ♗d3! ♗×d3 6 ♗×d3 e6 7 ♗f3 ♗h6 8 0-0 ♗f5 9 ♗e2 ♗e7 10 b3 ♗d7 11 c4 ♗f8 12 ♗d2 ♗g6 13 c5 White obtains a clear space advantage (Glek-Vyshmanavin, USSR 1985). Also favourable for White is 4 ... h6 5 g4 ♗h7 6 e6! fe 7 ♗f3 ♗f6 8 ♗d3 ♗e4 9 ♗e2 (Nunn-Bellon, 1984 Olympiad).

5 g2-g4 ♗f5-g6

6 ♗g1-e2 ...



6 ... c6-c5

Other possible lines are:

1) 6 ... f6! 7 ♗f4 (after 7 f4 fe 8 fe ♗h4+ 9 ♗g3 h5! Black seizes the initiative; sharp play ensues after 7 h4 fe 8 h5 ♗f7 9 de ♗d7 10 f4, e. g. 10 ... ♗b6?! — 10 ... ♗c5! — 11 ♗d4 0-0-0 12 a3 c5 13 ♗f3 ♗e7 14 b4 cb 15 ab ♗c6 16 ♗a4 ♗×b4+ 17 ♗d2 ♗e4+ 18 ♖f2 ♗d×e5 19 fe ♗×e5 20 ♗d3 with initiative to White, Marjanović-Campora, Niš 1985).
 7 ... fe! (a game Blumenfeld-Kasparian, USSR 1937, continued 7 ... ♗f7 8 ♗d3 h5 9 gh ♗×h5 10 ♗e2 ♗f7, and the chances were equalised) 8 de (in a game Balashov-Bellon, Karlovac 1979, White played 8 ♗×g6?! hg 9 de ♗c5 10 ♗f4 ♗b6 11 ♗d2; by playing 11 ... ♗×b2! 12 ♖b1 ♗a3 13 ♖b3 ♗a5 14 ♗d3 ♗e7 15 0-0 ♖h4 16 ♗e2 b5 Black was able to achieve slightly the better game) 8 ... ♗f7 9 ♗h3 (interesting is 9 h4!) 9 ... ♗d7 10 ♗e2 ♗c7 11 g5 ♗×e5 12 ♗×e6 (12 ♗×e6 ♗d6!) 12 ... ♗×e6 13 ♗×e6

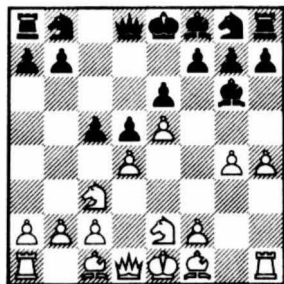
♞d6 14 ♞d2 ♜e7 15 0-0-0 ♜×e2
16 ♜×e2 ♜c5 17 ♞g4 0-0, and
Black's chances are slightly better
(Kapengut-Bagirov, USSR 1981).

2) 6 ... ♞b4 7 h4 ♞e4 8 ♞h3 h5
(more cautious is 8 ... h6) 9 ♜g3!
c5 10 ♞g5 f6 11 ♞d2 ♞×c3 (not
11 ... cd? because of 12 ♜c×e4!)
12 bc ♜c6 13 ef, and White has the
better play (Vasyukov-Rasuvayev,
USSR 1961), or 9 ... ♜d7 10 ♜×h5
g6 11 ♞g5 ♜a5 12 ♜f4 c5 13 a3
♞×c3+ 14 ♞×c3, and White is
clearly in a better position (Plaquet-
Roos, Austria 1981).

7 ♜f4 ♜e7 8 a3 ♞×c3+ 9 bc
♜a5 10 ♞d2 ♜d7 11 h4 ♜a4!
12 ♞a2 h6 13 ♜×g6 ♜×g6
14 ♞d3 ♜e7 15 ♞b2 b5 leads to
complex play with roughly equal
chances (van der Wiel-Hort, Bo-
chum 1981).

7 h2-h4 ...

The continuation 7 ♞e3 ♜c6
8 dc (weak is 8 h4 cd 9 ♞×d4 h6
10 ♜d2 ♞b4 11 a3 ♜a5 12 h5
♞h7 13 ♞g2 ♜ge7 14 ♞c1
♞×c3 15 ♜×c3 ♞c8, and Black
has excellent play, Lyublinsky-So-
kolsky, 17th USSR Championship,
1949) 8 ... ♜×e5! 9 ♜d4 ♜f6
10 f4 ♜e×g4 11 ♞b5+ ♜e7
12 ♞g1 ♜c7 13 c6! b6 14 ♜e2
♜×f4 15 c7 ♜e4 16 h3 ♜g3+ led,
after considerable entanglements, to
a draw in Braga-Timman, Mar del
Plata 1982).



In this critical position the continu-
ations 7 ... h6 (A) and 7 ... cd (B)
are the main variations.

Apart from these, the following
moves are possible:

1) 7 ... h5 8 ♜f4 ♞h7 9 ♜×h5 cd
10 ♜×d4 ♜c6 11 ♞b5! ♞×c2
12 ♞g5.

2) 7 ... ♜c6 8 h5 ♞e4 9 ♜×e4 de
10 c3 cd 11 ♜×d4 ♜×d4 12 cd
♞b4+ 13 ♞d2 ♞×d2+ 14 ♜×d2
♜d5 15 ♜b4 (analysed by Boles-
lavsky). He evaluates both variations
as favourable for White.

3) 7 ... f6! 8 ♜f4! (8 h5 ♞f7 9 ef
leads to unclear play) 8 ... ♞f7 9 ef
cd! 10 ♜×d4 gf 11 ♜a4+ ♜c6,
and Black has an excellent position
(Nunn-Cocozza, 1984 Olympiad).

A

7 ... h7-h6

8 ♞c1-e3 ...

Little research has been done on
Boleslavsky's recommendation
8 ♜f4 ♞h7 9 ♞e3 ♜e7 10 dc
♜ec6 11 ♞b5 ♜d7 12 ♜e2 ♜c7
13 0-0 ♜×e5 14 ♞ad1 ♞×c5
15 ♜f×d5. The game develops in

White's favour. Black's play can however be improved upon, e. g. 9 ... cd 10 ♖×d4 ♜c6 or immediately 9 ... ♜c6.

8 ... ♜d8-b6

Less energetic is 8 ... ♜c6 9 h5 ♜h7 10 f4! with space advantage for White (Boleslavsky).

9 h4-h5 ...

In a game Sokolov-Karpov (match 1987) Black obtained the better chances after 9 ♜d2 ♜c6 10 0-0-0 h5! 11 dc ♖×c5 12 ♖×c5 ♜×c5 13 ♜f4 ♜ge7 14 ♜×g6 ♜×g6 15 f4 hg 16 h5 ♜ge7 17 ♖e2 ♜a5! 18 a3 g3! and b7-b5.

9 ... ♖g6-h7

10 ♜d1-d2 ...

If 10 dc? ♖×c5 11 ♖×c5 ♜×c5 12 ♜d4 ♜a5! 13 b4 ♜b6!, the difficulties are already on White's side (Oll-Tukmakov, USSR 1986).

10 ... ♜b8-c6

Unclear are the consequences of 10 ... ♜×b2 11 ♜b1 ♜×c2 12 ♜×c2 ♖×c2 13 ♜×b7 with the threat ♜b5.

11 0-0-0 c5-c4!

12 f2-f4 ♜b6-a5

13 f4-f5 b7-b5

14 ♜c3×d5! b5-b4

It is by means of practical testing only that the variations 14 ♜×a2 15 ♜c3 ♜a1+ 16 ♜b1 ♖b4 or 14 ... ♜×d2+ 15 ♖×d2 ed 16 ♖g2 ♜ge7 17 ♜c3 can be appraised.

15 ♜d5-c7+ ♜a5×c7

16 ♜e2-f4 c4-c3!

There arises a sharp game with Black's chances not being worse (Nunn-Seirawan, Lugano 1983).

B

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 ♖f5 4 ♜c3 e6 5 g4 ♖g6 6 ♜ge2 c5 7 h4)

7 ... c5×d4

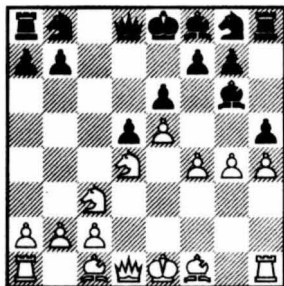
8 ♜e2×d4 ...

The continuation 8 ♜×d4 ♜c6 9 ♜a4 h5 10 ♜f4 ♖h7 11 ♜×h5 a6 (Boleslavsky) is double-edged and not unfavourable for Black.

8 ... h7-h5

9 f2-f4

After 9 ♖b5+ ♜d7 10 f4 (if 10 ♖g5 ♖e7 11 f4 hg 12 ♜×g4 ♖×g5 13 fg ♖h5 both sides have chances, Hort-Seirawan, Bad Kissingen 1981) 10 ... hg 11 f5 ♜×h4 12 ♜f1 efl 13 e6 fe 14 ♜×e6 ♜e7 15 ♜e2 ♜h2! Black has sufficient counterplay (Kotliar-Petter, Israel 1986).



Now the following variations arise:

1) 9 ... ♜d7 10 f5! ef 11 gf ♖×f5 12 ♜×f5 ♜×f5 13 ♜×d5 ♜c6 14 ♖h3 ♜×e5+ 15 ♜×e5

♖xe5 16 ♖f4 ♖d6! with equal play for Black (Kastarionov–Korolov, correspondence game 1986).

2) 9 ... hg 10 ♖b5+ ♖d7 11 f5 ♖xh4 (after 11 ... ♖xf5 12 ♖xf5 ef 13 ♖f4 White's position is better, Sax–Vadasz, Hungary 1985) 12 ♖f1 ♖h2 13 ♖xd7+ ♖xd7 14 ♗xg4 ef 15 ♖xf5 ♖xf5 16 ♗xf5+ ♖c6 17 ♖g5!, and White has a clear advantage (Moore–Mills, USA 1984).

III

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 ♖f5)

4 ♖g1–e2 ...

An apparently modest but in reality quite 'poisonous' manoeuvre linked with active plans on the K-side.

4 ... e7–e6

5 ♖e2–g3 ...

After 5 ♖f4 c5! 6 dc ♖xc5 7 ♖d3 ♖e7 8 0-0 0-0 9 c3 (in a game Krogius–Ilivitsky, USSR 1957, Black had excellent play after 9 ♖d2 ♖bc6 10 ♖xf5 ♖xf5 11 ♖f3 ♖b6 12 ♖d3 f6!) 9 ... ♖d7 10 ♗e2 ♗c7 11 ♖e1 ♖ac8 12 ♖d2 a6 the game is even (Ciocaltea–Golombek, Moscow 1956).

5 ... ♖f5–g6

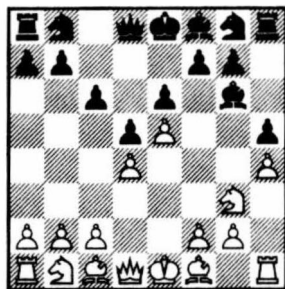
Also possible is 5 ... ♖e7 6 h4 (6 ♖xf5 ♖xf5 7 c3 c5 8 ♖d3 g6 leads to equal play, O'Donnell–Larsen, USA 1970; also after 6 ♖d3 ♖xd3 7 ♗xd3 ♗a5+ 8 c3 ♗a6 9 ♗xa6 ♖xa6, Simagin–Gufeld, 28th USSR Championship, 1960, or

6 c4 ♖g6 7 ♖c3 a6 8 h4 h6 9 h5 ♖h7 10 ♗b3 ♗b6, Henkin–Fluhr, USSR 1960, Black has no difficulties)

6 ... h6 (if 6 ... c5 7 ♖c3 a6 8 ♖g5 cd 9 ♖xf5 ef 10 ♗xd4 ♖bc6 11 ♗f4 ♗c7 12 0-0-0! the initiative is clearly on White's side) 7 h5 ♖h7 8 ♖d3 ♖xd3 9 ♗xd3, and White has a slight advantage (Boleslavsky).

6 h2–h4 h7–h6

The alternative is 6 ... h5, e. g.:



7 ♖e2 (7 ♖d3 ♖xd3 8 ♗xd3 ♗a5+ 9 c3 ♗a6! or 7 ♖d2 c5 8 dc ♖xc5 does not promise White anything — also good is 8 ... ♖c6 — 9 ♖b3 ♗b6 10 ♖xc5 ♗xc5 11 c3 ♖c6 12 ♖e3 ♗a5, Spassky–Bronstein, USSR 1961) 7 ... c5 8 dc (after 8 ♖xh5 ♖xh5 9 ♖xh5 g6 10 ♖e2 ♖xh4 11 ♖xh4 ♗xh4 12 ♖e3 ♖c6, Espig–Golz, GDR 1967, or 8 ♖xh5 ♖xh5 9 ♖xh5 g6 10 ♖g5 ♖e7 11 ♖xe7 ♗xe7 12 ♖g3 ♖xh4, Brzoszka–Veresov, Polanica Zdroj 1958, Black has excellent play) 8 ... ♖xc5 9 ♖d2 (or 9 ♖c3 ♖c6 10 ♖g5 ♖e7 11 ♗d2 ♖b4 12 ♖b5+ ♖f8 13 ♖a4 with equal

chances, Vukić) 9 ... ♖c6 10 ♖b3 ♗b6 11 ♗×h5 ♖×e5 12 ♗×g6 ♖×g6 13 ♗g5 ♗d6 14 ♗e2 ♗e5 15 ♗×e5 ♖×e5 16 f3 f6, and the game is even (Bronstein–Botvinnik, USSR 1966).

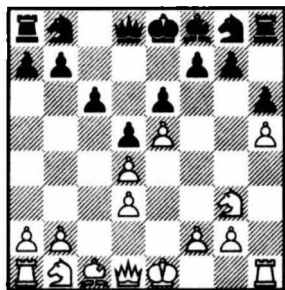
7 h4–h5 ♗g6–h7
8 ♗f1–d3 ♗h7×d3

There now arise two lines: 9 cd1? (A) and 9 ♗×d3 (B).

A

9 c2×d3!?

White weakens his pawn position in the centre in order to initiate in some case play on the K-side with ♗d1–g4.



9 ... ♖g8–e7

Besides, Black has the following possibilities:

1) 9 ... ♖d7 10 ♖c3 ♗b6 11 ♖c2 c5 12 dc ♗×c5 13 d4 ♗b4+ 14 ♗f1 ♖c8 15 ♗e3 ♖f8 16 ♖c1 ♖e7 17 ♖×c8+ ♖×c8 with equal play (Spassky–Liberson, Rostov 1960).

2) 9 ... ♗b6 10 ♗e3!? ♗×b2 11 ♖d2 ♗b4 (or 11 ... ♗b6 12 0-0 ♖e7 13 f4 ♖f5 14 ♖×f5 ef 15 g4!

with a strong white initiative, Asaturjan–Hodos, USSR 1969; worth noting is 11 ... ♗c3!?) 12 0-0 ♗×d2 13 ♖b1 ♗×a2 14 ♗×d2 b6 15 ♗b4 with unclear Gambit play (Kusmin–Bordonada, 1974 Olympiad).

10 ♖b1–c3 ♖b8–a6

10 ... ♖f5 merits consideration.

11 0-0 ♗d8–d7

12 ♖c3–e2 ♖e7–f5

Black has a good position and intends castling long and to play on the K-side.

B

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 ♗f5 4 ♖e2 e6 5 ♖g3 ♗g6 6 h4 h6 7 h5 ♗h7 8 ♗d3 ♗×d3)

9 ♗d1×d3 c6–c5

A game Arutyunov–Khalilbeili (USSR 1960) continued 9 ... ♗a5+ 10 c3 ♗a6 11 ♗×a6! ♖×a6 12 f4! c5 13 f5 cd 14 fe fe 15 cd ♗b4+ 16 ♗e2 ♖e7 17 a3 ♗a5 18 ♖f1 ♖c8 19 ♗d3, and White has an advantage in the end-game.

10 c2–c3 ♗d8–b6

11 0-0 ♖b8–c6

12 ♖f1–d1 ...

If 12 dc, so 12 ... ♗c7!

12 ... ♖a8–c8

Black's chances are not worse (Filip).

IV

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 ♗f5)

4 c2–c4 ...

This continuation was first intro-

duced in the nineteen fifties. Once White has closed the centre he is the first to liven up the game. However, in a number of variations Black obtains a good central outpost on d5 which secures him sufficient counter-play.

4 ... e7-e6
5 ♖b1-c3 d5×c4

Also not bad is 5 ... ♗d7 6 cd cd 7 ♗ge2 (or 7 ♗f3 ♗e7 8 ♘g5 a6 9 ♗h4 ♘g6 10 ♗e2 ♗b6 11 ♗d2 ♗c6 12 ♗d1 ♗c8 13 0-0 ♗e7 with equal play, Unzicker-Golombek, Munich 1954) 7 ... ♗e7 8 ♗g3 ♘g6 9 ♘d3 (or 9 h4 h5 10 ♘g5 a6 11 ♘d3 ♘×d3 12 ♗×d3 ♗b6 13 0-0 ♗c6, and the position is equalised, Boleslavsky) 9 ... ♗c6 10 0-0 ♗h4 11 ♗b5 ♗e7 12 ♗e3 0-0 13 f4 f5!, and Black's position is quite sound (Stoltz-Golombek, 1954 Olympiad).

6 ♗f1×c4 ♗b8-d7
7 ♗g1-e2 ...

After 7 ♗f3 ♗b6 8 ♗b3 ♗e7 9 0-0 ♗ed5 10 ♗e2 ♗e7 11 ♗e4 0-0 Black has a sound defensive position (Johannessen-Porath, 1960 Olympiad).

7 ... ♗g8-e7
8 0-0 ♗d7-b6
9 ♗c4-b3 ♗d8-d7
10 ♗e2-g3 ♗f5-g6
11 ♗c1-e3 0-0-0

Black has equal play (Konstantinopol'sky).

V

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 ♘f5)
4 h2-h4! ...

Even its outer appearance betrays that this move is heading for a double-edged play. Now Black has two main lines: 4 ... h6 (A) and 4 ... h5 (B).

A

4 ... h7-h6

In addition the following lines are playable:

1) 4 ... ♗d7! 5 ♗c3 h6 6 ♗e3 e6 7 g4 ♗h7 8 ♗ge2 ♗a6 9 ♗f4 ♗c7 10 ♗d2 0-0-0 11 0-0-0 b6 12 ♘g2 with some pressure by White (Aronin-Shatskes, Moscow 1961).

2) 4 ... c5 5 dcl ♗c7 6 ♗c3 ♗c6 7 ♗f3 ♗d8 8 ♗b5 ♗c8 (Tal-Botvinnik, match 1961). White was able to obtain the advantage after 9 c3.

5 g2-g4 ...

White does not achieve anything by playing 5 ♗e2 e6 6 ♗g3 ♗e7 7 ♗c3 ♗d7 8 ♗e3 ♗h7 9 ♘d3 ♗×d3 10 cd h5! (Tal-Botvinnik, match 1961).

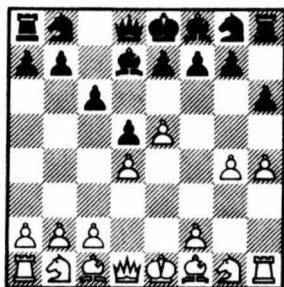
Worth noting is Boleslavsky's recommendation 5 ♗d3! ♗×d3 6 ♗×d3 e6 7 h5.

5 ... ♗f5-d7

Other possibilities include:

1) 5 ... ♗c8 6 ♗c3 ♗b6 7 ♗h3 e6 8 ♗ge2 c5 9 0-0 ♗c6 10 ♗e3 with space advantage for White (Aronin-Bronstein, USSR 1961).

2) 5 ... ♗h7? 6 e6! fe 7 ♗d3 ♗×d3 8 ♖×d3 ♘d6 9 f4 ♗d7 10 ♗f3 0-0-0 11 ♗e5 ♗×e5 12 fe, and Black's position is very cramped (Gufeld-Spiridonov, Helsinki 1961).



6 h4-h5 ...

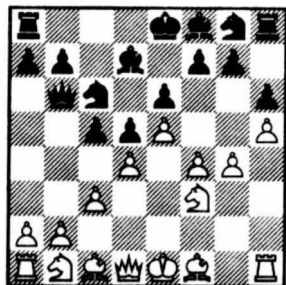
Apart from this White can choose between the following lines:

1) 6 c3 c5 7 ♗g2 e6 8 ♗e2 ♗b5 9 ♗a3? ♗×e2 10 ♖×e2 cd 11 cd ♗×a3 12 ba ♗c6 with a positional advantage to Black (Tal-Botvinnik, match 1961).

2) 6 ♗e3 c5 7 c3 ♗c6 8 a3 a5 9 b3 e6 10 h5 b5! 11 ♗f3 ♘b8 12 ♗g2 c4 13 bc bc, and the game is roughly equal (Bronstein-Donner, Budapest 1961).

3) 6 c4 e6! 7 ♗c3 (Bronstein-Portisch, Moscow 1961). Black was able to obtain excellent play after 7 ... c5! 8 dc ♗×c5 9 cd ed.

6 ... e7-e6
7 f2-f4 c6-c5
8 c2-c3 ♗b8-c6
9 ♗g1-f3 ♘d8-b6



10 ♖g1-f2!?

A new continuation. Also possible is 10 ♗h3 0-0-0 11 0-0 ♖b8 12 ♗a3 cd 13 cd ♗c8 with equal play.

10 ... 0-0-0

Interesting intricacies result after 10 ... f6! 11 ♖g3 0-0-0 12 a3 c4 13 ♗bd2 ♗a5 (in a game Malan-yuk-Psakhis, USSR 1979, White had strong pressure after 13 ... ♖b8 14 b3! cb 15 ♗×b3 ♘c7 16 ♗d3 ♗c8 17 a4 ♗a5 18 ♗×a5 ♘×a5 19 ♘b3) 14 ♗b1 ♗b3 15 ♗×b3 ♗a4 with complex, double-edged play.

11 ♖f2-g3 ♗g8-e7
Worth noting is 11 ... ♖b8.
12 a2-a3 c5-c4

Okhotnik-Bereshnoi (USSR 1981) continued 13 ♗bd2 ♗a5 14 ♗b1 ♗b3 15 ♗×c4! ♗×d2 16 ♗×d2 dc 17 ♗×c4 ♘c7 with sharp play.

B

(1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 ♗f5 4 h4)
4 ... h7-h5
5 c2-c4 ...

After 5 ♖e2 e6 6 ♗g3 ♖g6 arises the variation with 4 ♖e2 e6 5 ♗g3 ♖g6 6 h4 h5.

Aronin-Smyslov (USSR 1961) continued 5 ♖c3 e6 6 ♗f3 ♖g4 7 ♖e2 c5 8 ♖e3 ♖c6 9 dc ♖×f3 10 ♖×f3 ♗×e5 with equal play for Black.

5 ... e7-e6

Also possible is 5 ... dc 6 ♖×c4 e6 7 ♖c3 ♗d7 8 ♗ge2! ♖e7 9 ♗g3 ♖g6 10 ♗ce4 ♗h6! 11 ♗g5! (11 ♖g5) 11 ... ♗a5+ 12 ♖d2 ♖b4 13 ♗5e4 ♖×e4 14 ♗×e4 ♗f5 with good play for Black (Chandler-Speelman, Great Britain 1985).

6 ♖b1-c3 ♖f8-e7

After 6 ... ♗d7 7 cd cd 8 ♖g5 ♖e7 9 ♗d2 ♖×g5 10 ♗×g5 ♗×g5 11 hg a6 12 ♖e2 ♖g6 13 g4 White maintains some initiative.

7 ♗g1-f3 ♖f5-g4

8 ♖c1-e3 ♗g8-h6

A game Nunn-Miles (Amsterdam 1985) then continued 9 cd cd 10 ♗b3 ♗d7 11 ♖d3 ♗f5 (also good is 11 ... ♗c6) 12 ♗h2 ♗×e3 13 fe ♗c6 with excellent play for Black.

Part III

Other white 2nd move continuations

(1 e4 c6)

In this part we shall be analysing the quite large group of variations in which White dispenses with the move 2 d4. Among them 2 ♗f3 d5 3 ♖c3 ♖g4 is the most important line.

1

2 ♗g1-f3 d7-d5

3 ♖b1-c3 ...

The principal continuation. In practice this position often arises after such continuations as 2 ♗c3 d5 3 ♗f3, etc.

Sometimes 3 e5! is played (White achieves nothing by 3 ed cd 4 d4 ♗c6 or 4 b3 ♗f6 5 ♖b2 e6) e. g. 3 ... ♖g4 (worth noting is 3 ... ♖f5, and if 4 ♗d4?, then 4 ... ♖g6 5 e6 ♗b6 6 ♗g4 c5! 7 ef+ ♖×f7 8 ♗f3 ♗f6 with excellent play for Black, Tolush-Kotov, 11th USSR Championship, 1939; better is 4 ♖e2 e6 5 0-0 with equal play; also possible is 3 ... c5) 4 d4 e6 5 c3 ♗d7 6 ♖bd2 c5 7 dc ♖×c5 8 ♗a4 ♖×f3 9 ♗×f3 ♗e7 10 ♖f4 (in a game Tolush-Konstantinopolsky, 11th USSR Championship, 1939, play was equal after 10 ♗g4 ♗g6 11 ♖b5 0-0 12 ♖×d7 ♗×d7) 10 ... 0-0. Black has equal play (Tolush-Goglidze, USSR 1939).

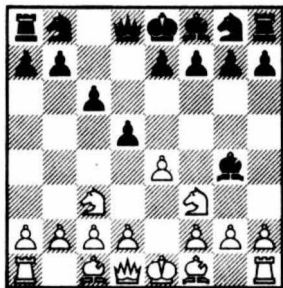
After 3 ♖c3 Black has three main continuations: 3 ... ♗g4 (A), 3 ... ♖f6 (B) and 3 ... de (C).

Less advisable is 3 ... d4?! After 4 ♖e2 c5 5 ♖g3 (not bad either is 5 c3 dc 6 bc ♖f6 7 ♖g3 e6 8 d4 with better play for White, Grünfeld) 5 ... ♖c6 6 ♗c4 e5 7 d3 ♗e7 8 0-0 ♖f6 9 ♖h4. White has piece pressure on the K-side which gives him the initiative (Keres-Tartakover, Paris 1954).

A

3 ... ♗c8-g4

This is one of the cases where the early development of the bishop before the knights represents the best plan for Black's play. Black solves the development problem of his light-squared bishop and sets up a solid defensive line. Thus, he complements the impact of his pawn chain on the light squares with piece control over the dark squares.



4 h2-h3 ...

Without any doubt the most important continuation for White.

Other moves hold little promise for White:

1) 4 d4 e6! 5 h3 ♗h5 6 g4 (6 ♗e2 ♖f6) 6 ... ♗g6 7 ♖e5! ♗×e4 8 ♖×e4 de 9 ♗g2 ♖d7 10 ♖×d7 ♗×d7 11 ♗×e4 ♖f6 12 ♗g2 ♗d8, and Black has no difficulties (Planinc-Kurajica, Skopje 1969).

2) 4 ed cd 5 h3 ♗×f3 6 ♗×f3 e6 7 d4 ♖c6 8 ♖e2 ♖b4 9 ♗b3 ♗c8 10 ♖c3 ♗c7 11 ♗b5+ ♖c6, and here too Black has excellent play.

3) 4 ♗e2 e6 5 0-0 ♖f6 6 h3 ♗×f3 7 ♗×f3 ♗e7 8 d4 0-0 9 e5 ♖fd7 10 ♖e2, and Black's position is very flexible.

After 4 h3 Black has two alternatives: 4 ... ♗×f3 (a) and 4 ... ♗h5! (b).

a

4 ... ♗g4×f3
5 ♗d1×f3 ...

Tal's experiment 5 gf?! found no followers. After 5 ... e6 6 d4 (it may be worth trying out 6 d3 and f3-f4) 6 ... ♖d7 7 ♗f4 (here the plan 7 ♗e3 followed by ♗d2 and 0-0-0 deserves attention) 7 ... ♗b4 8 h4 ♖gf6 9 a3 (Tal-Botvinnik, 1960, continued 9 e5? ♖h5 10 ♗g5 ♗a5 11 ♗d2 ♗b6 12 a3 ♗e7 13 ♗e3 g6, and, in view of the opponent's pawn weakness Black obtained positional advantage) 9 ... ♗×c3+ 10 bc de 11 fe ♖×e4 12 ♗f3 ♗a5 13 ♗h3, and Black's chances are better (Trifunović).

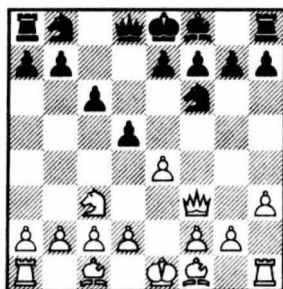
After the text move Black has two

main variations available: 5 ... ♗f6 (1) and 5 ... e6 (2).

5 ... de is also played. With this early surrender of the centre Black, however, gets the somewhat worse play: 6 ♗×e4 ♗d7 7 d4 ♗gf6 8 ♗×f6+ ♗×f6 9 c3 e6 10 g3 ♗e7 11 ♖g2 0-0 12 0-0 ♗b6 13 ♖e1 (Trifunović).

1

5 ... ♗g8-f6



The most active continuation by which Black immediately exerts pressure on the centre. White has now the choice between a number of answers. The most important are 6 d4 (1a) and 6 d3 (1b).

Let us also look at the following possible lines:

1) 6 ♗e2 e6 7 0-0 ♗c5 8 ♖d1 ♗d4! 9 ed cd 10 ♗b5+ ♗c6 11 ♗c2 ♗c5 12 d4 ♗e7.

Black has a solid position and no difficulties.

2) 6 g3 ♗×e4 7 ♗×e4 de 8 ♗×e4 ♗d5 (also possible is 8 ... ♗d7 9 ♖g2 e6 followed by ♗d6

with equal play) 9 ♗×d5 cd 10 ♖g2 e6 11 c4 ♗c6 12 cd ♗b4, and the game is equal (Boleslavsky). 3) 6 g4?! ♗×e4 7 ♗×e4 de 8 ♗×e4 ♗d7 9 ♖g2 e6 10 d4 ♗d6 followed by 0-0 and e6-e5 with good play for Black.

4) 6 e5?! ♗fd7 7 e6?! (or 7 d4 e6 8 ♗f4 c5 9 dc ♗c6 10 ♗g3 ♗a5 11 ♗d2 ♗×c5 12 f4 g6, and Black's chances are clearly better, Sergiyevsky-Stolyar, USSR 1961; 7 ♗g3 e6 8 ♗e2 c5 9 f4 ♗c6 10 b3 ♗d4 is also in Black's favour) 7 ... fe 8 d4 e5! 9 de ♗×e5 10 ♗g3 ♗f7 11 ♗f4 ♗d7 12 0-0-0 e5 13 ♖e1 ♗f6 14 ♗×e5 ♗f×e5 15 f4 ♗d6 16 fe ♗×e5, and Black's position is very good.

1a

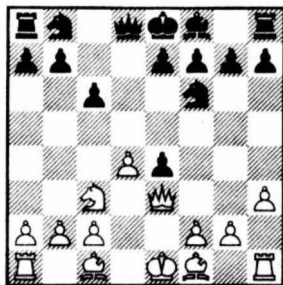
5 d2-d4 ...

For a long time this continuation featured gambit character. In 1961 however, Fischer found a way to calm down the game. In both cases Black has every reason to hope to get equal chances.

6 ... d5×e4
7 ♗f3-e3!?

(see diagram)

Fischer's move. If 7 ♗×e4?! ♗×d4 8 ♗d3 ♗bd7! 9 ♗e3 ♗d5 10 ♖d1 e6 11 0-0 ♗c7 12 ♗×f6+ ♗×f6 13 ♗g3 ♗d6 14 ♗h4 ♗c5 15 g3 ♗c5 Black keeps his extra pawn (Dubinin-Illivitsky, Union of



Socialist Federal Soviet Republics, 1957).

7 ... ♖b8-d7

The following moves are also possible:

1) 7 ... ♖a5 8 ♖d2 ♖f5 9 0-0-0 e6 10 f3 ef 11 g4 ♖a5 12 ♖c4 with double-edged play and roughly equal chances (Messing-Nemet, Yugoslavia 1967).

2) 7 ... ♖d5 8 ♖×e4 ♖×c3 9 bc ♖d7 10 ♖b1 ♖c8 11 c4 e6 12 ♖d3 ♖e7 13 0-0 with better play for White (Boleslavsky).

8 ♖c3×e4 e7-e5!

A game Fischer-Keres (Bled 1961) continued 8 ... ♖×e4 9 ♖×e4 ♖f6 10 ♖d3 ♖d5 11 c4 ♖d6 12 ♖e2 e5 13 d5 e4 (worth noting is 13 ... cd 14 cd ♖×d5 15 ♖×d5 ♖×d5 16 ♖b5+ ♖e7 17 0-0 with roughly equal play) 14 ♖c2 ♖e7 15 dc ♖×c6 16 0-0 0-0 17 ♖e3, and White's position is slightly better.

Also after 10 ... e6 (instead of 10 ... ♖d5) 11 ♖e2 ♖e7 12 0-0 0-0 (Boleslavsky) White has the slightly more favourable chances.

9 d4×e5 ...

After 9 ♖×f6+ ♖×f6 10 f4! ♖×f4 11 ♖×f4 ef 12 ♖×f4 ♖b6 13 0-0-0 0-0-0 Black has no trouble (Suetin).

9 ... ♖f6×e4

10 ♖e3×e4 ♖d8-a5+

11 ♖c1-d2 ♖a5×e5

Black has every hope of equality (Suetin).

1b

(1 e4 c6 2 ♖f3 d5 3 ♖c3 ♖g4 4 h3 ♖×f3 5 ♖×f3 ♖f6)

6 d2-d3 ...

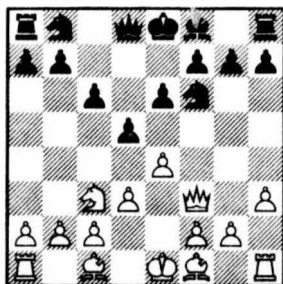
This cautious white path in the centre has become quite popular recently. White wants to fortify e4 in order to close the game in the centre. He then plans a pawn attack on the K-side. Black on his part would normally reply with a pawn advance on the Q-side and at the same time try to contain his opponent's attacking efforts on the K-side. The manoeuvre ♖f6-e8-c7 and the blockade ♖f8-b4.

A rather complex positional struggle develops with roughly equal chances for both sides.

6 ... e7-e6

(see diagram)

In this critical position White has several continuations in hand: 7 g3 (v), 7 g4 (w), 7 ♖d2 (x), 7 a3 (y) and 7 ♖e2 (z).



v

7 g2-g3 ...

With this move White is aiming at a King's Indian structure in order to expand his activities on the K-side gradually. This very slow advance leads to good chances for Black to take over the initiative on the Q-side.

7 ... ♜f8-b4

By far the most active method of counterplay. Apart from this move, Black has the following equally safe defensive possibilities available:

1) 7 ... ♜bd7 8 ♜g2 ♜c5 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♜e2 ♜d4 11 ♜h2 ♜xc3 12 bc de 13 de ♜a5 with equal play (Smyslov-Flohr, 18th USSR Championship, 1950).

2) 7 ... g6 8 ♜g2 ♜g7 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♜g5 ♜bd7 11 ♜ae1 h6 12 ♜c1 b5 with complex play and equal chances for Black (Vasyukov-Ilivitsky, USSR 1958).

3) 7 ... ♜e7 8 ♜g2 0-0 9 0-0 ♜a6 10 ♜e2 ♜e8 11 e5 ♜ac7 12 h4 h6 13 ♜d1 ♜d7 14 c4 f5, and Black has a solid defensive position (Averbakh-Flohr, 19th USSR Championship, 1951).

8 ♜c1-d2 d5-d4

9 ♜c3-b1 ♜d8-b6

A game Fischer-Petrosian (Candidates Tournament 1959) continued 9 ... ♜xd2+ 10 ♜xd2 e5! (weaker is 10 ... ♜a5 11 a3 ♜bd7 12 ♜e2 h5 13 h4 ♜g4 14 ♜h3 ♜df6 15 0-0 0-0-0 16 ♜c4 ♜c7 17 e5 ♜e8 18 a4, with good chances for a white attack, Boleslavsky-Mikenas, 24th USSR Championship, 1957) 11 ♜g2 c5 12 0-0 ♜c6 13 ♜e2 ♜e7 14 f4 0-0-0 15 a3 ♜e8! 16 b4 cb 17 ♜c4 f6 18 fe fe 19 ab ♜c7 with slightly better chances for Black.

10 b2-b3 ...

Black also maintains the slightly better chances if 10 c3 ♜c5 11 ♜c1 ♜bd7 12 ♜e2 (bad is 12 ♜g2? ♜e5 13 ♜e2 dc 14 bc ♜xf2+); also in Black's favour is 12 ♜d2 ♜e5 13 ♜e2 0-0-0 14 c4 g5! 12 ... 0-0-0 13 e5 ♜d5 14 ♜g2 ♜c7 15 f4 f6.

10 ... ♜b8-d7

11 ♜f1-g2 a7-a5

12 a2-a3 ♜b4xd2+

13 ♜b1xd2 ♜b6-c5

14 ♜f3-d1 h7-h5

Thus went a game Fischer-Keres (Candidates Tournament 1959). After 15 ♜f3? ♜c3+ 16 ♜e2 ♜c5 17 ♜d2 ♜e5 18 b4 ♜xf3 19 ♜xf3 ♜e5 Black had a clear advantage. White should have played 15 h4! ♜g4 16 0-0 ♜de5, and Black's advantage is small.

w

(1 e4 c6 2 ♖f3 d5 3 ♗c3 ♘g4 4 h3
♙×f3 5 ♗×f3 ♖f6 6 d3 e6)

7 g2-g4!?

A sharp continuation. White launches an immediate attack on the K-side without any consideration for the weakening of his pawn position. Practice has shown that Black has excellent resources for counterplay.

7 ... ♙f8-b4

8 ♙c1-d2 ...

Not advisable is 8 g5! ♗a5!
9 ♙d2 d4 10 gf dc 11 bc ♙×c3,
and the chances for Black are clearly better.

8 ... ♗d8-a5

9 a2-a3 d5-d4

10 ♖c3-b1 ♙b4×d2+

11 ♖b1×d2 h7-h5

Black's position is slightly better (Boleslavsky).

x

(1 e4 c6 2 ♖f3 d5 3 ♗c3 ♘g4 4 h3
♙×f3 5 ♗×f3 ♖f6 6 d3 e6)

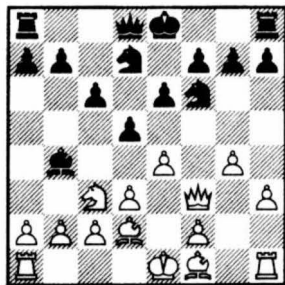
7 ♙c1-d2 ...

White prevents a pin on the a5-e1 diagonal and, if the occasion arises, can castle long. But this continuation is somewhat passive and does not pose any serious problems to Black.

7 ... ♖b8-d7

Also worth noting is 7 ... ♙b4,
and if 8 a3, then 8 ... ♙d6 with
good play for Black.

8 g2-g4 ♙f8-b4



The most active counter-measure at this point. Black needs to be cautious, or else the white threats on the K-side can become very dangerous, e. g.:

1) 8 ... g6 9 0-0-0 ♙g7 10 h4 h5
11 g5 ♖g4 12 ♙h3 ♗b6 13 ♖de1
♖ge5 14 ♗g3 with a dangerous
white initiative (Darga-Donner,
Beverwijk 1964).

2) 8 ... h6! 9 0-0-0 (interesting is
9 h4! ♖e5 10 ♗g3 ♖e×g4 11 e5
♙c5 12 ♖d1 ♗c7 13 f4, and Black
loses material, Timman-Miles,
Amsterdam 1985) 9 ... ♙b4 10 a3
♙a5 11 h4! ♗e7 12 g5, and Black's
defence is difficult (Planinc-Kurajica,
Sarajevo 1970).

9 a2-a3 ...

Double-edged play also results af-
ter 9 g5! ♖g8 10 h4 d4 11 ♖b1
♗b6 (Suetin-Shamkovich, Kalinin-
grad 1972).

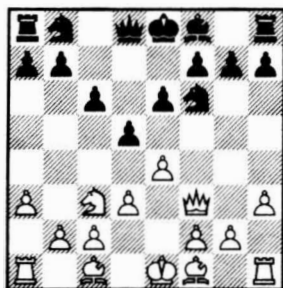
9 ... ♙b4-a5

10 g4-g5

The position is double-edged (Tri-
funović).

y

(1 e4 c6 2 ♖f3 d5 3 ♖c3 ♖g4 4 h3
 ♖×f3 5 ♗×f3 ♖f6 6 d3 e6)
 7 a2-a3



In conjunction with 8 g4! this is probably the most common plan. It was introduced into practice in 1958 by Smyslov during a game with Botvinnik. White prevents the sally with the bishop to b4 and is eager, on his part, to proceed on the K-side. But practice has shown that Black has sufficient resources to achieve equal play.

7 ... ♖f8-e7

Also possible are the following lines:

1) 7 ... ♖c5 8 ♖e2 (or 8 g4 0-0 9 h4 ♖bd7 10 g5 ♖e8 11 ♖h3 ♗e7 with complex play and approximately equal chances) 8 ... 0-0 9 0-0 ♖bd7 10 ♗g3 ♖d4 11 ♖h6 ♖e8 12 ♖g5 ♖df6 13 ♖f3 ♗d6 14 ♖f4 ♗c5, and the game is equal (Fischer-Larsen, Zurich 1959).

2) 7 ... ♗a5 8 ♖d2 ♗b6 9 0-0-0 d4 10 ♖e2 a5 11 g4 ♖c5 12 g5 ♖fd7 13 h4 ♗b5 14 ♖c3 dc

15 ♖×c3 ♗b6 16 ♖×g7 ♖g8
 17 ♖c3 ♖d4 18 ♖×d4 ♗×d4
 19 c3 ♗b6 20 d4 ♖a6, and Black's position is sufficiently solid (Muchnik-Khalilbeili, USSR 1958).

3) 7 ... ♖bd7 8 g4 g6 (Fischer-Kagan, Natanya 1968, proceeded 8 ... ♖d6 9 g5 ♖g8 10 h4 ♖e7 11 h5 ♗b6 12 ♖h3 0-0-0 13 a4 a5 14 0-0 with a clear advantage to White; worth noting is 8 ... d4! 9 ♖e2 ♗a5+ 10 ♖d2 ♗b6 11 b3 a5 12 g5 ♖g8 13 ♖g2 ♖d6 14 0-0 ♖e7 15 ♗h5 e5 16 h4 0-0 17 ♗g4 ♗c7 with approximately equal chances, Belousov-Perelstein, USSR 1986) 9 h4 h5 10 g5 ♖g4 11 ♖h3!, and White exerts strong pressure on the K-side (Boleslavsky).

8 g2-g4 ...

If 8 g3, then 0-0 9 ♖g2 ♖e8 10 0-0 f5! 11 ♗e2 ♖c7 12 ♖d2 ♖d7 13 ♖ae1 ♖f6 and Black stands solid (Boleslavsky-Bagirov, Moscow 1959).

8 ... ♖f6-d7

Also possible is 8 ... de 9 de ♖fd7 10 ♖d2 (or 10 ♖e3 ♖g5 11 0-0-0 ♖×c3+ 12 ♗×e3 ♗e7) 10 ... ♖g5 11 0-0-0 ♖×d2+ (11 ... h6) 12 ♖×d2 ♗h4? (better is 12 ... ♗e7 or 12 ... e5) 13 ♗e3 e5 14 f4! ef 15 ♗×f4 ♗e7 16 h4 h6 17 ♖c2! ♖c5 18 ♖d4 g6 19 h5 with a strong initiative to White (Suetin-Spiridonov, Brno 1975).

9 d3-d4 ♗d8-b6

After 9 ... ♖g5 10 ♖e3 ♖×e3 11 fe or 9 ... ♖f8 10 ♖c3 ♖g6

11 ♜g3 ♜h4 12 ♜h2 ♖d7
13 0-0-0 (Smyslov–Botvinnik, match 1958) White's chances are clearly better.

10 ♜f3–d3 e6–e5
11 e4×d5 e5×d4
12 ♜c3–e2 0-0
13 ♜f1–g2 ♖d7–f6

The chances are equal, e. g. 14 dc ♜×c6 15 0-0 ♜ad8 (Trifunović).

z

(1 e4 c6 2 ♖f3 d5 3 ♜c3 ♜g4 4 h3 ♜×f3 5 ♜×f3 ♖f6 6 d3 e6)
7 ♜f1–e2 ...

This relatively little analysed developing move is currently hardly played.

7 ... ♜b8–d7
8 ♜f3–g3 g7–g6
9 0-0 ...

In a game Gurgenzidze–Petrosian (Moscow 1961) Black had excellent play after 9 h4? h5 10 0-0 ♜b6 11 ♜b1 ♜h6 12 ♜g5 ♜×g5 13 hg ♖h7 14 ed ed.

By playing 9 ♜f4 ♜g7 10 ♜d6? ♜b6! 11 ♜b1 d4 12 ♖d1 ♜a5+ Black wins a pawn.

9 ... ♜f8–g7
10 ♜c1–f4 ♜d8–b6
11 ♜a1–b1 0-0
12 ♜e2–f3 ...

After 12 ♜c7 ♜d4! 13 ♜f3 e5 14 ♜d6 ♜fe8 15 ♜a3 de 16 de b5 Black seizes the initiative (Smyslov–Botvinnik, match 1958).

12 e5 ♖e8 is not dangerous, and Black has a sound position.

12 ... e6–e5
13 ♜f4–d2 d5×e4
14 d3×e4 a7–a5

Karpov–Portisch (Montreal 1979) continued 15 ♜fd1 a4 16 ♜h4 ♜c5 17 ♜e3 ♜e7 18 a3 ♜fd8 19 ♜e2 ♖c5 20 ♜f1 ♖e6 21 f3 b5 with approximately equal chances.

2

(1 e4 c6 2 ♖f3 d5 3 ♜c3 ♜g4 4 h3 ♜×f3 5 ♜×f3)

5 ... e7–e6

A solid defensive move. The continuation 6 d3 ♖f6 now leads to the variation just examined. But there are also several independent continuations here.

6 d2–d4 ...

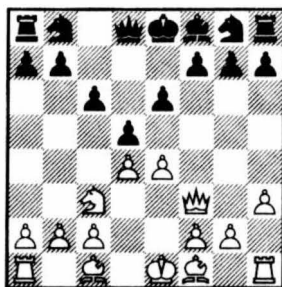
The following are a number of rare replies:

1) 6 g3 ♖f6 7 ♜g2 de 8 ♖×e4 ♖×e4 (or 8 ... ♖bd7 9 d4 ♖×e4 10 ♜×e4 ♖f6 11 ♜d3 ♜e7 12 0-0 0-0 13 b3 ♜b6 with equality, Alexander–Golombek, Great Britain 1951) 9 ♜×e4 ♜d5 10 d4 ♖d7 11 0-0 ♜×e4 12 ♜×e4 ♖f6 13 ♜f3 0-0-0, and Black's position is very secure (Lutikov–Ilivitsky, USSR 1957).

2) 6 a3!? ♖d7 7 d4 g6 8 ♜e3 ♜g7 9 0-0-0 ♖e7 10 g4 ♜a5 11 h4 h6 12 ♜g3 0-0-0 13 ♜e2 with a marginal advantage to White (Panno–Pomar, Palma de Mallorca 1971).

3) 6 ♜e2 ♖f6 7 0-0 ♖bd7 8 d4 de 9 ♖×e4 ♖×e4 10 ♜×e4 ♖f6 11 ♜d3 ♜c7 12 c4 ♜e7 13 ♜d2

0-0 14 ♖c3 ♖ad8 15 ♗f3 ♗d7, and the position is level (Milić-Clarke, 1956 Olympiad).



6 ... d5×e4

The principal reply: Black accepts the pawn sacrifice. Alternatives are the following:

- 1) 6 ... ♗f6 7 ♖d3 ♖e7 8 e5 (worth considering is 8 ♖e3 0-0 9 0-0) 8 ... ♗fd7 9 ♗g3 g6 (a game Bronstein-Makogonov, USSR 1947, continued 9 ... ♖f8 10 ♗e2 c5 11 c3 ♗c6 12 0-0 cd 13 cd ♗b6 14 ♖e3 ♗×b2 15 ♖ab1, and White has a strong initiative for the pawn) 10 h4 ♗b6 11 ♗e2 c5 12 h5 ♖g8 13 c3 ♗c6 14 ♗e3 0-0-0 15 h6, and White's pressure on the dark squares makes itself felt (Bronstein-Makogonov, Tbilisi 1951).
- 2) 6 ... g6! 7 ed7! cd 8 ♖f4 ♗c6 9 ♖b5 ♖g7 10 0-0 ♗e7 11 ♖e5 0-0 12 ♖×g7 ♗×g7 13 ♗e2 a6 14 ♖×c6 ♗×c6 15 c3 ♗f6 with equal chances (Konstantinopolsky-Kasparian, 20th USSR Championship, 1952).
- 3) 6 ... ♖b4 7 e5 (interesting is 7 ♗g3!?, Keres) 7 ... c5 8 a3 ♗a5

9 ab1 ♗×a1 10 ♖b5+ ♗c6 11 0-0 cd 12 ♗×d5 ed 13 ♗b3 ♗e7 14 ♖g5, and White's initiative looks very dangerous (Ciocaltea-Soos, Roumania 1952).

4) 6 ... ♗b6 7 ♖d3 ♗f6 8 0-0 de 9 ♗×e4 ♗×d4 10 ♗×f6+ ♗×f6 11 ♗g3 ♗e7 12 ♖f4 ♗d7 13 ♖ad1 ♗f6 14 ♖e5 0-0-0 15 ♖e2, and the advantage is on White's side (Panov-Kopylov, USSR 1946).

7 ♗c3×e4 ...

After 7 ♗×e4 ♗f6 8 ♗d3 ♗a6 Black has no serious difficulties.

7 ... ♗d8×d4

If 7 ... ♗f6 8 ♖d3 ♗bd7 9 c3 ♗×e4 10 ♗×e4 ♗f6 11 ♗e2 ♗d5 12 0-0 ♗h5 13 ♗×h5 ♗×h5 14 ♖e3 White has a small though lasting advantage for the end-game (Boleslavsky-Bronstein, match 1950).

8 ♖f1-d3 ♗b8-d7

After 8 ... ♗f6 9 ♖e3 (or 9 c3 ♗d8 10 0-0 ♖e7 11 ♖d1 ♗bd7 with approximately equal prospects) 9 ... ♗d8 (a double-edged struggle develops if 9 ... ♗×b2 10 0-0 ♗×e4 11 ♗×e4 ♗f6 12 ♖ab1) 10 0-0-0 ♗bd7 11 ♖c4, and White has excellent development and initiative for the pawn (Boleslavsky-Flohr, 18th USSR Championship, 1950).

9 ♖c1-e3 ♗d4-d5

10 0-0-0 ♗g8-f6

It would be interesting to test 10 ... ♗×a2!?

11 ♖c1-b1

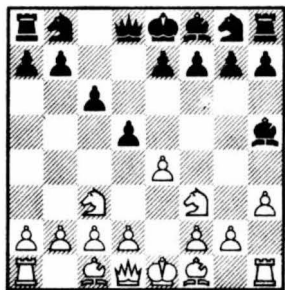
In this double-edged position the chances are approximately even (Trifunović).

b

(1 e4 c6 2 ♖f3 d5 3 ♗c3 ♘g4 4 h3)

4 ... ♘g4-h5!

This bishop's manoeuvre leads to a double-edged game. Its theoretical repute is questionable. It is hardly possible to calculate the arising tactical entanglements with precision and they are therefore difficult to assess. Up until recently this plan was one of the 'stepchildren' of the openings theory. Latest practice shows that research into this system will not be concluded for a long time to come.



5 e4×d5 ...

The principal reply. White is eager to exploit the weakness of Black's Q-side and, at the same time push his opponent's light-squared bishop aside by g2-g4, ♖f3-e5 and h3-h4.

If White plays immediately 5 g4?!, the answer 5 ... de 6 gh (6 ♖×e4 ♘g6 is favourable for Black) 6 ... ef

7 ♗×f3 e6 is possible with double-edged play.

After 5 d4 e6 6 ♘e2 ♖f6 7 e5 ♖fd7 8 0-0 ♘e7 9 ♖h2 ♘g6 10 f4 f6! 11 ♘g4 f5 12 ♘f3 ♗b6 Black has equal play (Solontiev-Volovich, USSR 1961).

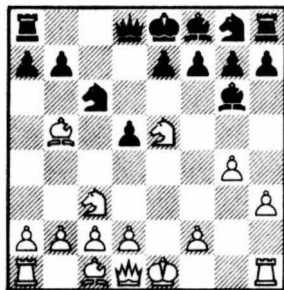
5 ... c6×d5

6 ♘f1-b5+ ♗b8-c6

7 g2-g4 ♘h5-g6

8 ♖f3-e5 ...

The continuation 8 d4 gives Black time to help him organise his defence. Keres-Filip (Buenos Aires 1964) continued 8 ... e6 9 ♖e5 ♖e7 10 h4 f6 11 ♖×g6 hg 12 ♘e3 ♗c8 13 ♘d3 ♗b4 14 ♘f1 ♖f7 15 a3 ♗bc6 16 ♘d3, and here Black was able to equalise the game with 16 ... e5.



8 ... ♗a8-c8

Other possibilities are:

1) 8 ... ♗d6 9 d4 f6 (10 ♘f4 was threatened) 10 ♖×g6 hg 11 ♗d3 0-0-0 (naturally not 11 ... ♖f7? because of 12 ♖×d5!) 12 ♘×c6 ♗×c6 13 ♗×g6 e5 14 ♗d3! (14 ♘d2 is not so convincing because of 14 ... e4! 15 ♗f5+ ♖b8

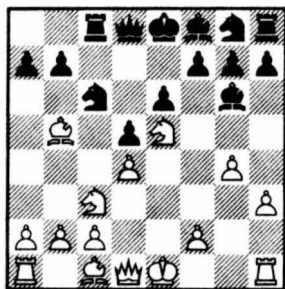
16 0-0-0, and White has only a slight advantage) 14 ... ♖b4 15 ♖d2 e4 16 ♗b5 ♖×c3 17 ♗×c6+ bc 18 bc, and Black has no compensation for his lost pawn (Keres–Boleslavsky, match tournament 1941).

2) 8 ... ♗c7! 9 d4 e6 10 ♗e2 ♖f6 11 h4 ♖b4 12 h5 ♖e4 13 f3 0-0 14 ♖×c6 bc 15 g5 c5 16 ♖e3! ♖×f3 17 ♖×f3 ♖e4 18 0-0 ♖×c3 19 bc ♖×c3 20 ♖ad1 ♖ab8 21 ♖f2 ♖b2 22 h6!, and White has a won position (Suetin–Veresov, Minsk 1955).

3) 8 ... ♗b6? 9 ♖×d5!, and Black's position is hopeless.

9 d2–d4 e7–e6

Not 9 ... f6? 10 ♖×g6 hg 11 ♗d3 ♖f7 12 ♖×d5!, and Black has a lost position.



10 ♗d1–e2 ...

It is important to prevent the move f7–f6. If White plays 10 h4 straight away, Black answers 10 ... f6, and after 11 ♖×g6 (a game Moses–Kelbeck, Harrachov 1967, proceeded 11 h5! ♖×c2 12 ♖×c6 bc 13 ♗×c2 cb 14 ♗e2 b4 15 ♗×e6+ ♗e7 16 ♗×e7+

♖×e7 17 ♖e2 ♖c6 18 ♖f4 ♖d7 19 ♖d2 ♖d6 with equal chances) 11 ... hg 12 ♖e3 (after 12 ♗d3 ♖f7 13 h5? gh 14 gh ♖ge7 15 ♖e3 ♖f5, Fischer–Smyslov, Candidates Tournament 1959, or 13 ♖e3 ♗a5 14 h5 gh 15 gh ♖ge7, Usachi–Usov, USSR 1959, White is in a difficult position) 12 ... ♖b4 13 ♖f1 ♖×c3 14 bc ♖e7 15 ♗e2 a6 16 ♖d3 ♖a5 Black obtains equal play (Liberson–Smyslov, 27th USSR Championship, 1960).

10 ... ♖f8–b4

Other possibilities are:

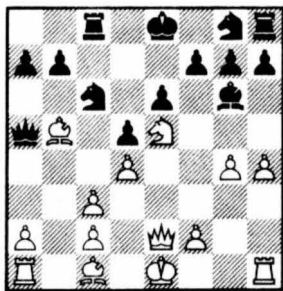
1) 10 ... ♖d6? 11 ♖×g6 hg 12 ♖×d5 ♖b8 13 ♖c3 ♗×d4 14 ♖e3 ♗b4 15 0-0-0 with a clear advantage for White (Gurgenidze–Liberson, 27th USSR Championship, 1960).

2) 10 ... ♖e7 11 ♖f4 ♖f8 12 ♖×c6 bc 13 ♖a6, and White wins the exchange.

11 h3–h4 ♖g8–e7

11 ... ♗b6 is most effectively answered by 12 0-0 (after 12 a3 ♖×c3+ 13 bc ♖e7 14 h5 ♖e4 15 0-0 a6! 16 ♖d3 — in Black's favour is 16 ♖×c6+ ♖×c6 17 ♖×c6 ♗×c6 18 f3 ♗×c3 19 ♖d2 ♗×d4+ — 16 ... ♖×d3 17 cd ♖×e5 18 ♗×e5 f6 19 ♗c1 ♖f7 Black definitely has sufficient counterplay, Boleslavsky) e. g. 12 ... ♖e7 (other continuations are unsatisfactory for Black: 12 ... a6 13 ♖×c6+ bc 14 h5 ♖e4 15 ♖×e4 de 16 c3 ♖e7 17 f3!, Klo-

van-Zirzenis, Riga 1960; 12 ... ♖f6
 13 ♖a4 ♗a5 14 h5 ♕e4 15 f3 a6
 16 ♕×c6+ bc 17 b3 ♕c3
 18 ♖×c3 ♗×c3 19 ♕e3 ♗×c2
 20 ♗×a6! , Boleslavsky; 12 ...
 ♗×d4? 13 ♖d1 followed by
 14 ♖×d5) 13 h5 ♕e4 14 ♖×e4
 de 15 c3 ♕d6 16 ♖c4 ♗d8
 17 ♖×d6+ ♗×d6 18 ♗×e4, and
 White has a clear advantage (Trifunović). However, 11 ... ♕×c3+
 12 bc ♗a5 merits attention, with the
 following possible continuations:



1) 13 ♕b2 ♖e7 14 h5 ♕e4 15 f3
 f6 16 fe (if 16 ♖×c6 bc 17 ♕a6
 ♖b8 18 0-0-0 ♕×f3 19 ♗×f3
 ♗×a6 Black has excellent play)
 16 ... fe 17 0-0 with sharp play (Tri-
 funović and Minev).

2) 13 0-0 ♗×c3 14 ♕×c6+ bc
 15 ♗a6 ♖c7 16 ♕a3 ♗×d4
 17 ♕×e7 ♖×e7 18 ♗a3+, c5
 19 ♗×a7+ ♖f8 20 ♗d7 ♖e8, and
 Black seizes the initiative.

3) 13 ♖h3 ♖e7 14 h5 ♕e4
 15 ♕d2 h6 16 c4 ♗d8.

4) 13 ♕d2 ♖e7 14 c4 ♗a3 15 h5
 ♕×c2 16 0-0-0-0 17 ♖×c6 ♖×c6
 18 ♕×c6 ♖×c6. In the two last

mentioned variations Black has ex-
 cellent counterplay.

12 h4-h5 ♕g6-e4
 13 0-0 ...

After 13 f3 0-0! 14 ♖×c6 (14 fe
 ♖×d4) 14 ... ♖×c6 15 ♕e3!7 (if
 15 ♕×c6 ♖×c6 16 0-0 ♕×c3
 17 bc ♖×c3 18 ♕d2 ♖×c2 19 fe
 de 20 ♖fc1 ♖b2 21 ♖cb1 ♖c2
 Black's position is not worse) 15 ...
 ♗f6! 16 fe ♖×d4 17 ♕×d4
 ♗×d4 18 ♖d1 ♕×c3+ 19 bc
 ♗×c3+ 20 ♖f1 de 21 ♗×e4 f5!
 (weaker is 21 ... ♗×c2 22 ♗×c2
 ♖×c2 23 ♖d7!, Sikora-Lerch-
 Gralka, Leczczyzny 1985) 22 ♗×e6+
 ♖h8 23 ♕d3 ♗d4! Black has a
 clear advantage (van der Wiel-Tim-
 man, Amsterdam 1986).

13 ... 0-0

A game Romanishin-Bagirov
 (USSR 1974) proceeded 13 ...
 ♕×c3 14 bc a6 (14 ... h6)
 15 ♖×c6 ♖×c6 16 ♕×c6+
 ♖×c6 17 f3 ♖×c3 18 ♕d2
 ♖×c2 19 fe de 20 ♖ad1 ♗×d4+
 21 ♕e3 ♗b2 22 ♖d2 ♖×d2
 23 ♗×d2 ♗×d2 24 ♕×d2 0-0
 25 g5 with a slight advantage to
 White.

14 ♕b5×c6 ...

14 ♖×c6 ♖×c6 15 ♕×c6
 ♕×c3 16 bcl ♖×c6 transposes into
 the main variation.

14 ... ♕b4×c3

15 b2×c3 ♖e7×c6

16 ♖e5×c6 ♖c8×c6

17 f2-f3 ♖c6×c3

After 18 ♕d2 ♖×c2 19 fe de

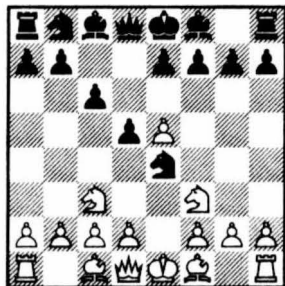
there ensues a double-edged position with approximately equal chances (Bagirov).

B

(1 e4 c6 2 ♖f3 d5 3 ♖c3)
3 ... ♗g8-f6

An unusual system of dubious repute. All the same White needs to steer clear of a number of cliffs. In the main variation the black knight audaciously intrudes on e4, and a struggle for its encirclement ensues. At the same time this outpost requires White to exercise great tactical caution in his endeavours to achieve a favourable position.

4 e4-e5 ♗f6-e4



Not good is the retreat 4 ... ♗fd7. As compared with the French Defence Black has to use an extra tempo for c6-c5. Besides, White has still the dangerous move 5 e6! in hand. The following variations can arise:

1) 5 e6! fe 6 d4 e5 7 de e6 8 ♗f4 ♗e7 9 ♗g5 ♗×g5 10 ♖h5+, and White has a clear positional advantage (Boleslavsky).

2) 5 d4 e6 6 ♗e2 c5 7 c3 ♗c6 8 g3 cd 9 cd ♗b4+ 10 ♗c3 f6 11 ef ♗×f6 12 ♗g2 0-0 13 0-0, and this position of the French Defence is favourable for White.

5 ♗c3-e2 ...

The strongest continuation. The following variations do not promise White much:

1) 5 ♗b1! ♗f5 6 d3 ♗c5 7 ♗e3 e6 8 ♗bd2 ♗e7 9 ♗e2 0-0 10 0-0 ♗cd7 11 c4 ♗a6 12 a3 ♗c7 13 b4, and White has only a marginal advantage.

2) 5 ♗×e4 de 6 ♗g5 ♗d5 7 d3 ed.

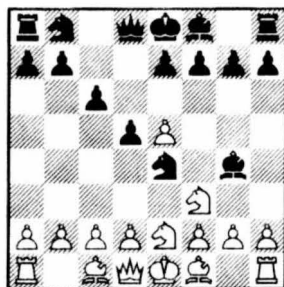
3) 5 ♗e2 ♗×c3 6 dc ♗g4.

Black has good play in the two last mentioned cases.

5 ... ♗d8-b6

In addition Black has the following lines at his disposal:

1) 5 ... ♗g4, and now:



1a) 6 h3! ♗×f3 7 gf ♗c5 (after 7 ... ♗g5 8 ♗f4! ♗e6 9 ♗×e6 fe 10 d4 g6 11 h4 White has an overwhelming advantage) 8 d4 ♗ca6 9 h4! e6 10 h5, and White's pressure

makes itself very much felt (Boleslavsky).

1b) 6 d4 e6 7 h3 ♜×f3 8 gf ♖g5 9 ♖f4 h6 10 h4 ♖h7 11 c3 ♜e7 12 h5, and the position resembles the preceding variation where the Black position is very difficult.

1c) 6 ♖fg1 ♖c5 (6 ... ♜×e2 7 ♖×e2! followed by d2-d4 is clearly in White's favour) 7 f3 ♜d7 8 d4 ♖ca6 9 c3, and White's chances are better.

2) 5 ... ♜f5 6 d4 e6 7 ♖fg1 h5 8 h4 ♜e7 9 g3 c5 10 f3 ♖×g3 11 ♖×g3 ♜×h4 12 ♖1e2 ♖c6 13 c3, and Black has no compensation for the piece.

3) 5 ... e6 6 d3 ♖c5 7 d4 ♖cd7 8 ♖f4 c5 9 c3 cd 10 cd ♜b4+ 11 ♜d2 ♜a5 12 a3 ♜×d2+ 13 ♜×d2 ♜×d2+ 14 ♜×d2 ♖b6 15 b3, and White has a clear advantage in the end-game.

6 d2-d4 c6-c5
7 d4×c5 ♖e4×c5

Another continuation is 7 ... ♜×c5. After 8 ♖ed4 ♖c6 9 ♜b5! ♜d7 (a game Shabashov-Geduld, Vitel 1972, proceeded 9 ... a6? 10 ♜×c6+ bc 11 0-0 ♜b6 12 e6! fe 13 ♖e5 with strong pressure from White) 10 0-0 ♖×e5 (or 10 ... e6 11 ♜e3 ♜b4 12 c4 dc 13 ♜c2 ♖c5 14 a3 ♜a5 15 ♜×c4 with a clear advantage to White, Boleslavsky) 11 ♖×e5 ♜×b5 12 ♖×b5 ♜×b5 13 ♜e1 ♖f6 (13 ... e6 14 c4!) 14 ♜g5 e6 15 c4! ♜a5 16 ♜×f6 gf 17 ♖×f7! and White

has a very strong attack (Neshmetdinov-Kamyshov, Gorki 1950).

8 ♖e2-f4 ...

Black has good piece play for his pawn after 8 ♜×d5 ♖c6.

8 ... e7-e6
9 ♜f1-e2 ♜f8-e7
10 0-0 0-0
11 c2-c4 d5×c4
12 ♜e2×c4 ♖b8-c6
13 ♜d1-e2

White's position is preferable (Filip).

C

(1 e4 c6 2 ♖f3 d5 3 ♖c3)
3 ... d5×e4
4 ♖c3×e4 ...

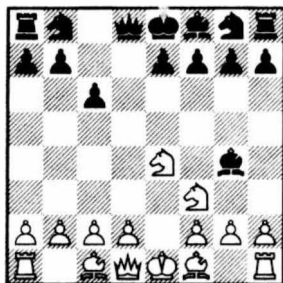
This variation bears much resemblance to the system 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4, and it often transposes into it. There are, however, differences. Thus, for instance, the variation 4 ♖×e4 ♜f5 is not very tempting for Black: he would soon have to put up with the exchange of his light-squared bishop for his opponent's knight, which guarantees White a lasting positional advantage.

Black has the choice between several continuations:

4 ... ♜g4 (a), 4 ... ♖d7 (b) and 4 ... ♖f6 (c). Here we shall deal only with lines which do not transpose into the analogous variations after 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×c4.

a

4 ... ♜c8-g4



After 4 ... ♖f5 5 ♗g3 ♖g4 6 h3 ♗×f3 7 ♜×f3 White has a small though clear advantage.

5 h2-h3 ...

It is important to get an immediate answer from the black bishop g4. Other replies from White do not cause any concern to Black, e. g.:

1) 5 ♖c4 e6 6 c3 ♗d7 7 d4 ♗gf6 8 ♗g3 ♜c7 9 h3 ♖×f3 10 ♜×f3 ♖d6 (Smyslov-Makogonov, 12th USSR Championship, 1939).

2) 5 d4! e6 (also possible is 5 ... ♖×f3) 6 ♖d3 ♗f6 7 h3 ♖h5 8 0-0 ♗×c4 9 ♖×c4 ♗d7 (Spassky-Petrosian, USSR 1955).

3) 5 ♗g3 ♗f6 6 ♖c2 e6 7 ♗e5 ♖×e2 8 ♜×e2 ♜d5 9 ♗f3 c5 (Lasker-Flohr, Zurich 1934). In all cases Black can equalise easily.

5 ... ♗g4×f3

After 5 ... ♖h5 6 ♗g3 ♖×f3 (Lasker-Müller, Zurich 1934, continued 6 ... ♖g6? 7 h4 h6 8 ♗e5 ♖h7 9 ♜h5 g6 10 ♜f3 ♗f6 11 ♜b3 ♜b5 12 ♜×b7, and White has a winning position; also good is 10 ♖c4) 7 ♜×f3 ♗f6 8 ♖c4 e6 9 c3 (or 9 0-0 ♗bd7 10 ♖e1 ♜c7

11 d4 0-0-0 12 a4 c5 13 a5 with initiative to White, A. Zaitsev-Bronstein, Moscow 1968) 9 ... ♖d6 10 d4 0-0 11 ♖g5 ♗bd7 12 0-0 ♜a5 13 h4, and Black faces an uphill struggle for equality (Boleslavsky-Panov, USSR 1943).

6 ♜d1×f3 ♗b8-d7

7 d2-d4 ...

Fischer-Cardoso (Portorož 1958) continued 7 ♗g5! ♗g6 8 ♜b3? e6 9 ♜×b7 ♗d5! and Black has equalised.

7 ... ♗g8-f6

8 ♖f1-d3 e7-e6

9 c2-c3 ♖f8-e7

10 0-0 ♗f6×e4

11 ♜f3×e4 ♗d7-f6

Tal-Portisch (match 1965) continued 12 ♜h4 ♗d5 13 ♜g4, and White has a slight initiative.

b

(1 e4 c6 2 ♗f3 d5 3 ♗c3 de 4 ♗×e4)

4 ... ♗b8-d7

5 ♖f1-c4 ♗g8-f6

6 ♗e4-g5 e7-e6

7 ♜d1-e2 ♗f6-d5

Bad is 7 ... h6? 8 ♗×f7! or also 7 ... ♗b6? 8 ♗e5.

8 d2-d4 h7-h6

9 ♗g5-e4 ♖f8-e7

10 0-0 ...

Interesting is 10 ♖d2 followed by 0-0-0.

10 ... 0-0

In a game Smyslov-Golombek (Venice 1950) White secured lasting

pressure after 10 ... ♗c7 11 ♖b3 1
0-0 12 c4.

11 a2-a4 a7-a5

White has a small though lasting advantage (Tsherkovskiy-Dzindzhihashvili, Kaliningrad 1972).

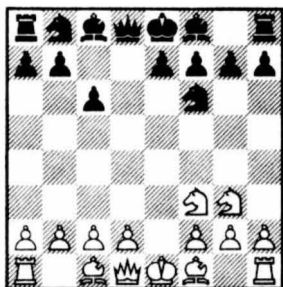
c

(1 e4 c6 2 ♖f3 d5 3 ♗c3 de
4 ♗×e4)

4 ... ♗g8-f6

5 ♗e4×f6+ ...

Often White also plays 5 ♗g3 with the following variations arising:



1) 5 ... c5 6 b3 (after 6 d4 ♗c6 7 dc ♗×d1+ 8 ♗×d1 ♖g4 9 ♖e2 0-0-0+ or 6 ♖b5+ ♖d7 7 ♗e2 ♗c6 8 0-0 e6 9 b3 the chances are equal) 6 ... ♗c6 7 ♖b2 e6 8 ♖b5 ♖d7 9 0-0 ♖e7 10 ♗e2 0-0 11 ♖×c6 ♖×c6 12 ♗e5 ♗c7 with equal prospects (Lutikov-Botvinnik, Moscow 1966).

2) 5 ... h5! 6 h4 (Kan-Flohr, USSR 1944, proceeded 6 ♖c4 h4 7 ♗e5 e6 8 ♗e2 ♗a5 9 f4 ♗d7, and the game was equal) 6 ... ♖g4 7 ♖e2 ♗bd7 8 d4 e6, and Black has equal play.

5 ... e7×f6

The other continuation is the double-edged 5 ... gf (2).

6 ♖f1-c4 ♖f8-e7

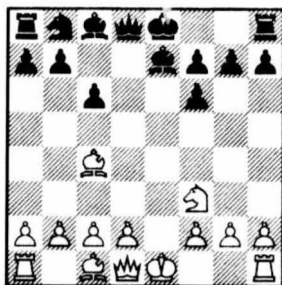
The move 6 ... ♖d6 is also frequently used, with the following variations: 7 ♗e2+ (also good is 7 0-0 0-0 8 d4 ♖e6 9 ♖×e6 fe 10 ♖e1 ♖e8 11 c4 ♗a6 12 ♖d2 ♗d7 13 ♖c3 with a clear positional advantage to White, Fischer-Panov, Skopje 1967) 7 ... ♖e7 (Klovan-Vis-taneckis, USSR 1964, continued 7 ... ♗e7 8 ♗×e7+ ♗×e7 9 0-0 ♖e6 10 ♖e1 ♗d7 11 ♖e2 a5 12 d4 a4 13 ♖e3 ♗a6 14 c3, and the complex end-game is in White's favour) 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♖e1 (Black also has some difficulties after 9 d4 ♖g4 10 c3 ♖e8 11 ♖e1 ♗d7 12 h3 ♖×f3 13 ♗×f3, Kurajica-Holmov, Skopje 1969) 9 ... ♖d6 10 d4 ♖g4 11 ♗e4 f5 (11 ... ♖h5 12 ♗h4!, and the threat 13 ♗f5 is very unpleasant, Ragozin-Boleslavsky, Sverdlovsk 1942) 12 ♗d3 ♖×f3 13 ♗×f3 ♗h4 14 ♗×f5 ♗×h2+ 15 ♗f1 ♗h4 16 ♖e3 c5 17 g3, and Black has considerable difficulties (Novopashin-Kuvaldin, USSR 1966).

(see diagram)

7 0-0 0-0

8 d2-d4 ♖e7-d6

Weaker is 8 ... ♖g4 9 c3 ♖d6 10 h3 ♖h5 11 g4 ♖g6 12 ♗h4



♖d7 13 ♜f3 ♜e8 14 ♜xg6 hg
 15 h4 ♜f8 16 ♜d2, and White has
 substantial threats on the K-side (Bo-
 leslavsky–Batuyev, USSR 1939).

It is interesting to follow up the
 changes in the strategic approach to
 this type of position. In a text book
 which appeared in 1926, Lasker gave
 the following assessment of the
 opening variation 1 e4 c6 2 ♜f3 d5
 3 ♜c3 de 4 ♜x e4 ♜f6 5 ♜x f6+
 ef 6 ♜c4 ♜d6 7 ♜e2+ ♜e7 8 d4
 0-0 9 0-0: "White's plan is to exploit
 his pawn superiority on the Q-side
 while he remains passive on the K-
 side. Black, on the other hand, at-
 tempts to force his opponent to
 move a pawn on the K-side in order
 to attack it with his own pawns." The
 last mentioned games Ragozin–Bo-
 leslavsky and Boleslavsky–Batuyev
 are in sharp contrast to that plan.
 Undoubtedly, the strategic horizons
 have been expanded considerably
 with the present type of position.

9 ♜f1–e1 ...

Or 9 ♜b3 ♜d7 10 ♜e1 ♜c7
 11 c4 c5 12 ♜c3 ♜d8 13 ♜c2 b6
 14 ♜ad1 ♜f8 15 h3 ♜g6 16 ♜d2

♜b7 with equal prospects (Boles-
 lavsky).

9 ... ♜d8–c7
 10 ♜d1–d3 ♜f8–d8
 11 ♜d3–e4 ♜b8–d7

In a game Suetin–Sokolsky (Minsk
 1959) there followed 12 ♜d2 ♜f8
 13 ♜d3 ♜g6 14 c4 c5 15 dc
 ♜x c5 16 b4 ♜f8, and Black's posi-
 tion is sufficiently flexible and solid.

2

(1 e4 c6 2 ♜f3 d5 3 ♜c3 de
 4 ♜x e4 ♜f6 5 ♜x f6+)

5 ... g7x f6
 6 ♜f1–c4 ...

Besides, White has the choice be-
 tween the following continuations:

1) 6 g3 ♜g4 7 ♜g2 ♜d7 (after
 7 ... e6 8 d4 ♜d7 9 0-0 ♜g7
 10 ♜e1 White maintains a small po-
 sitional advantage, Konstantino-
 polsky–Flohr, 14th USSR Champion-
 ship, 1945) 8 h3 (in a game Rauser–
 Budo, 10th USSR Championship,
 1937, the prospects were even after
 8 0-0 ♜h3 9 b3 ♜a6 10 ♜b2
 ♜x g2 11 ♜x g2 0-0-0 12 ♜e1 h5
 13 ♜e2 ♜c7) 8 ... ♜e6 9 b3 ♜a6
 10 ♜b2 0-0-0 11 ♜e2 ♜h6, and
 Black obtains equal play (Rauser–
 Konstantinopolsky, 10th USSR
 Championship, 1937).

2) 6 b3 ♜g8 (not bad either is 6 ...
 ♜g4) 7 ♜b2 ♜h6 8 ♜c2 ♜g4
 9 0-0-0 ♜d7, and Black has good
 play (Penrose–Larsen, Hastings
 1956).

After the move in the main varia-

tion 6 ♗c4 there are two alternatives, 6 ... ♖g8 (2a) and 6 ... ♗f5 (2b).

Not good is 6 ... ♗g4 because of 7 ♗e5!

White also obtains the better prospects after 6 ... ♗g7 7 h3 ♗f5 8 0-0 e6 9 ♖e1 0-0 10 d4 ♗d7 11 ♗f4 ♖e8 12 ♗d2 ♗e7 13 ♗b3 a5 14 a3 ♗f8 15 c4. White has more space and the better piece position: his advantage can not be disputed.

2a

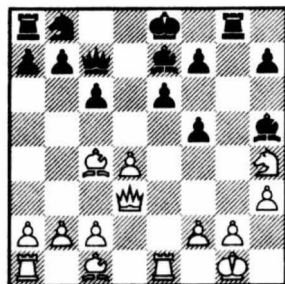
6 ... ♖h8-g8
7 0-0 ♗c8-g4
8 d2-d4 ♗d8-c7
9 ♗d1-d3 e7-e6

After 9 ... ♗d7 10 h3 ♗x f3 (10 ... ♗xh3 11 ♗xh7 ♖xg2+ 12 ♗h1 White has a clear advantage) 11 ♗x f3 ♗a5 (12 ♗h5 was threatened) 12 ♗b3 White's initiative is very clear.

10 ♗f3-h4! f6-f5

If 10 ... ♖h8 11 ♖e1 ♗d7 (11 ... ♗c7 12 ♗h6!) 12 ♗e4! ♗h5 13 ♗f4 ♗a5 (favourable for White is 13 ... ♗d6 14 ♗x d6 ♗x d6 15 ♗f5 ♗f8 16 ♗f4) 14 d5 ♗c5 (or 14 ... cd 15 ♗x d5 ♗c5 16 ♗c6+ with advantage to White) 15 ♗f5 cd 16 ♗xh5 dc 17 ♖x e6+! Black's position is bad (Boleslavsky).

11 h2-h3 ♗g4-h5
12 ♖f1-e1 ♗f8-e7



13 ♗h4xf5!

At this point the following variations are possible:

1) 13 ... ♗g6 14 ♗g3 ♗xg3 15 ♗xg3 ♗xc2 16 ♗f4 ♗d7 17 ♖a1 ♗g6 18 d5!, and Black's position is very difficult.

2) 13 ... e6 14 ♗d2 ♗d8 15 d5 ♗d7 (or 15 ... c5 16 ♗xf5 ♗g6 17 d6! with a devastating assault by White) 16 ♖xe7 ♗xe7 17 ♖e1+ ♗d8 18 d6 ♖e8 19 ♖xe8+ ♗xe8 20 ♗g5, and Black will hardly be able to find a satisfactory defence (Boleslavsky).

2b

(1 e4 c6 2 ♗f3 d5 3 ♗c3 de 4 ♗xe4 ♗f6 5 ♗xf6+ gf 6 ♗c4) 6 ... ♗c8-f5
7 d2-d4 ♗d8-c7
8 ♗f3-h4! ♗f5-g6
9 ♗d1-f3 ...

The entanglements arising after 9 f4 e6 10 f5 ♗xf5 11 ♗xf5 ♗a5+ are in Black's favour.

9 ... ♗b8-d7

9 ... ♗xc2 is dangerous because of 10 0-0!

10 ♖c1-f4 ♜...

After 10 0-0 e6 11 ♖f4 ♖d6
12 ♖g3 f5 13 ♖xg6 ♗xg6 Black
obtains sufficient counterplay.

10 ... ♗c7-a5+

11 ♖f4-d2 ...

After 11 c3 ♖b6 12 ♖b3
(12 ♖e2 ♗d5!) 12 ... ♗b5!
13 0-0-0 a5 14 ♖xg6 hg 15 ♗d3
arises an unusual position with equal
prospects.

11 ... ♗a5-a4

Dangerous is 11 ... ♗c7 12 0-0-0
e6 13 ♗h3 ♖g7 (14 ♖xg6 is
threatened) 14 ♖xe6 fe 15 ♖xg6
hg 16 ♗xe6+ ♗d8 17 ♖he1
♖b6 18 d5! ♗d7 19 dc ♗xe6
20 ♖xe6 with a decisive white at-
tack.

12 ♖h4xg6 h7xg6

13 ♗f3-d3 ♖f8-h6

14 ♖d2xh6 ♖h8xh6

According to Boleslavsky, Black
has good defensive resources and
chances for equality after 15 0-0-0
a6 16 ♗c3 ♖h8 17 ♖b3 ♗a5
18 d5 cd 19 ♖xd5 ♗b6.

II

(1 e4 c6)

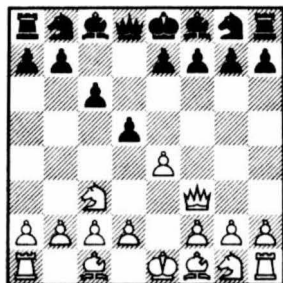
2 ♖b1-c3 d7-d5

3 ♗d1-f3!

(see diagram)

This early queen move does not
pose any particular problems to
Black. He has a number of possibili-
ties to obtain equal play:

1) 3 ... ♖f6 4 e5 ♖fd7 5 d4 e6



6 ♗g3 c5 7 ♖b5 cd 8 ♖f3 a6
9 ♖bxd4 ♖c6 10 ♖d3 ♗c7
11 ♖xc6 bc 12 0-0 ♖c5 13 b4
♖xd3 14 cd with a positional ad-
vantage to Black (Schmidt-Delan-
der, Berlin/West 1970).

2) 3 ... d4 4 ♖c4 ♖f6 5 e5 dc 6 ef
cd+ 7 ♖xd2 ef 8 0-0-0, and the
prospects are even (Trifunović).

3) 3 ... de 4 ♖xe4 ♖d7 5 b3 (or
5 d4 ♖df6 6 c3 ♖xe4 7 ♗xe4
♖f6 with equality) 5 ... ♖gf6 (also
possible is 5 ... ♖df6 6 ♖xf6+
♖xf6 7 ♖b2 ♖g4 8 ♗g3 c6
9 ♖e2 ♖f5 10 ♖d1 ♖g6 11 ♖f3
♖d6 12 ♗h4 ♖c7, and Black has a
very sound position, Csom-Navar-
ovszky, Kecskemét 1969) 6 ♖g3 e6
7 ♖b2 ♗a5, and Black has good
chances to equalise the game (Trifu-
nović).

III

(1 e4 c6)

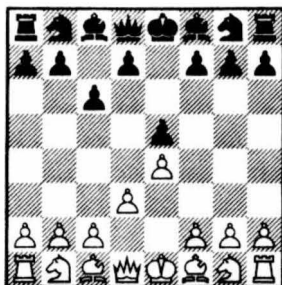
2 d2-d3 ...

Although this continuation is mod-
est, it does pose Black a few prob-
lems. White develops in the spirit of
a King's Indian structure and obtains

a very flexible position. If Black organises the mobilisation of his forces with precision however, he has every chance of obtaining equal play.

2 ... d7-d5

Often 2 ... e5 too is played, whereupon the following variations arise:

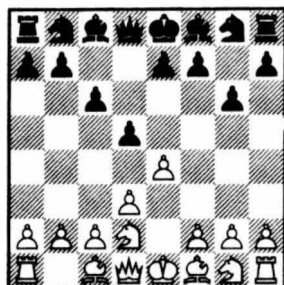


1) 3 g3 ♖f6 4 ♜g2 d5 5 ♘d2 ♜d6 (Stein-Jimenez, Havana 1969, continued 5 ... ♜c5 6 ♘gf3 0-0 7 0-0 ♜e8 8 c3 ♘bd7 9 b4! ♜f8 10 ♘b2 ♜c7 11 a3 a5; White was able to obtain a lasting initiative with 12 ♜c2) 6 ♘gf3 ♘bd7 7 0-0 0-0 8 ed cd 9 ♜e1 ♜e8 10 ♘f1 h6, with equal chances (Stein-Barcza, Tallinn 1971).

2) 3 ♘f3 d6 4 g3 ♘f6 5 ♜g2 ♜e7 6 0-0 0-0 7 h3 (if 7 ♘bd2 ♘bd7 8 c3 ♜e8 9 ♜c2 ♜f8 10 a4 a5, Tringov-Shamkovich, Varna 1970, or, after 7 ♘c3 ♜c7 8 a4 a5 9 d4 ♘a6 10 h3 ♜e8, Shamkovich-Barcza, Salgótarján 1967, the prospects are even) 7 ... ♘bd7 8 ♘bd2 ♜e8 9 a4 ♜f8 10 a5 d5 11 ♜e2 g6 12 ♜d1 ♜b8, and Black is in no particular difficulty (Ljubojević-Bilek, Bath 1973).

3) 3 f4 d5! 4 fe de 5 ♘c3 ♘b4 6 ♜d2 ♜f5 7 e6! ♘h6 8 ef+ ♘xf7 with approximately equal play (Robatsch-Ortega, Havana 1967).

3 ♘b1-d2 g7-g6



In addition Black has a number of other continuations:

1) 3 ... ♘f6 4 ♘gf3 ♜g4 5 h3 (also good is 5 e5 ♘fd7 6 e6 fe — 6 ... ♜xe6 7 ♘d4! — 7 h3 ♜h5 8 g4 ♜f7 9 ♘g5 ♜g8 10 d4 e5 11 de ♘xe5 12 f4 e6 13 ♜e2 ♘bd7 14 ♘b3 with slightly better chances for White, Maslovsky-Birbrager, USSR 1973) 5 ... ♜xf3 (if 5 ... ♜h5, so 6 g4 ♜g6 7 e5 ♘fd7 8 e6) 6 ♜xf3 e6 7 g3 ♘bd7 8 ♜g2 ♜e7 9 0-0 ♜b6 10 ♜e2 with a slight advantage to White (Konstantinopolsky-Sokolsky, correspondence game 1965).

2) 3 ... de 4 de (after 4 ♘xe4 ♘d7 5 ♘f3 ♘gf6 Black has nothing to worry about) 4 ... e5 5 ♘gf3 ♜c5 (sufficient for equality would also be 5 ... ♜c7 6 ♜c4 ♜e7 7 0-0 ♘f6 8 b3 ♜g4 9 ♜b2 ♘bd7 10 ♜e1 ♜d8 11 h3 ♜h5 12 ♜d3

0-0, Neshmetdinov-Baranov, USSR 1964) 6 ♖e2 (after 6 ♖c4 ♗e7 7 0-0 ♖f6, or 6 ♖d3 ♖f6 7 ♗e2 ♖bd7 8 ♖c4 ♗c7, Karner-Korchmar, USSR 1968, Black encounters no difficulties to speak of; unfavourable is, of course, 6 ♖×e5? ♖×f2+1, and Black seizes the initiative) 6 ... ♗e7 7 0-0 ♖f6 8 c3 a5 9 b3 0-0 with equal play for Black (Sax-Markland, 1974 Olympiad).

3) 3 ... e5 4 ♖gf3, and now:

3a) 4 ... ♖d6 5 g3 f5! (after 5 ... ♖e7 6 ♖g2 0-0 7 0-0 f5 8 ed cd 9 c4 dc 10 ♖×c4 ♖bc6 11 ♖e1 ♖g6 12 h4! the pressure from White becomes unpleasant, Ivkov; however, 5 ... ♖f6 6 ♖g2 0-0 7 h3! ♖e8 8 0-0 a5 9 ♖e1 ♖a6 10 d4 ♖×e4 merits consideration, with approximately equal prospects, Sax-Martin, Hastings 1983/84) 6 ♖g2 ♖f6 7 0-0 0-0 8 c3 ♖h8 9 ♖e1 f6? 10 de ♖g4 11 h3 ♖h5 12 g4 ♖g6 13 ed ♖×d5 14 ♖c4 e4 15 ♖fe5 ♖c5 16 ♖e3 ♖×e3 17 ♖×e3 ♗g5! with equality (Hübner-Miles, Tilburg 1986).

3b) 4 ... ♖d7 5 d4! de (or 5 ... ed 6 ed c5 7 ♖c4 ♖e7 8 d6 ♖f6 9 ♖f4 with advantage to White) 6 ♖×e4 ed 7 ♖c4 (also good is 7 ♗×d4 ♖gf6 8 ♖g5 ♖e7 9 0-0-0 0-0 10 ♖d6, and White has seized the initiative, Tal-Smyslov, Candidates Tournament 1959) 7 ... ♖df6 8 ♖eg5 ♖h6 9 0-0 ♖e7 10 ♖×d4 0-0 11 c3 ♖f5 12 ♖ge6! ♖×e6 13 ♖×e6 ♗×d1 14 ♖×d1 ♖fc8

15 ♖f4, and White has a perceptible superiority (Ljubojević-Marović, Yugoslavia 1972).

4) 3 ... ♖d7 4 ♖gf3 ♗c7 5 ed cd 6 d4 g6 7 ♖d3 ♖g7 8 0-0 e6 9 ♖e1 ♖e7 10 ♖f1 ♖c6 11 c3 0-0 12 ♖g5 with a slight advantage to White (Fischer-Marović, Zagreb 1970).

4 ♖g1-f3 ...

One may also come across the following continuations:

1) 4 g3 ♖g7 5 ♖g2 ♖f6 6 e5 ♖g4 7 d4 h5 8 ♖e2 ♖a6 with complex play (Stein-Hort, Sousse 1967).

2) 4 f4! ♖f6 5 ♖gf3 ♖g7 6 e5 ♖g4 7 ♖b3 h5 8 ♖e2 ♖h6 9 0-0 ♗b6 10 d4 ♖g4 11 ♖e3 e6 12 ♖f2 ♖f5 with good play for Black (Shamkovich-Sokolov, USSR 1963).

4 ... ♖f8-g7

5 g2-g3 ...

The most logical continuation in the spirit of the King's Indian Defence. The following variations are also possible:

1) 5 c3 e5 6 a4 (Ljubojević-Hort, Madrid 1973, went 6 ♖e2 ♖e7 7 h4 h6 8 h5 g5 9 d4 ed 10 ♖×d4 0-0 11 0-0 c5 12 ♖c2 ♖bc6 13 f4 gf 14 ♖×f4, and now Black would have been able to obtain an advantage by playing 14 ... ♖e5) 6 ... ♖e7 7 a5 0-0 8 ♖e2 h6 9 0-0 f5 10 b3 ♖h7 11 ♖a3 ♖g8 with approximately equal play (Ljubojević-Savon, Petropolis 1973).

2) 5 ♖c2 e5 6 b3 ♗e7 7 ♖b2 ♗d7 8 0-0 0-0 9 d4 ed 10 ♖×d4 ♗f6 11 ed ♗e×d5 with approximately equal play (Florian-Filip, Brno 1974).

3) 5 d4 dc 6 ♗×e4 ♖f5 7 ♗c5 b6 8 ♗b3 ♗f6 9 g3 ♗c8 10 h3 0-0 with excellent play for Black (Malis-Filip, Ostrava 1972).

4) 5 e5 c5 6 c3 ♗c6 7 d4 cd 8 cd ♗b6 9 ♗b3 ♖g4 10 ♖e2 ♗h6, and Black has strong piece pressure on the immobile white centre (Robatsch-Portisch, Kecskemét 1962).

5 ... e7-e5

Not bad either is 5 ... de 6 de b6l, e. g. 7 ♖c4 (7 ♖g2? ♖a6l) 7 ... ♗f6 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♖e1 ♗c7 10 c3 e5 11 a4 a5 12 b3 ♖d8 13 ♗c2 h6, and Black has no difficulties (Neshmetdinov-A. Zaitsev, 35th USSR Championship, 1967).

In a game Fischer-Ibrahimoghu (1970 Olympiad) Black attempted 5 ... ♗f6?!, however, after 6 ♖g2 0-0 7 0-0 ♖g4 8 h3 ♖×f3 9 ♗×f3 ♗bd7 10 ♗c2 dc 11 dc ♗c7 12 a4 ♖ad8 13 ♗b3 b6 14 ♖e3 c5 15 a5 White has some pressure.

6 ♖f1-g2 ♗g8-e7

6 ... ♗h6?! is artificial. In a game Ribli-Barcza (Budapest 1971) White had a clear advantage after 7 0-0 0-0 8 cd cd 9 c4 ♗c6 10 cd ♗×d5 11 ♗c4 ♗c6 12 ♖×h6 ♖×h6 13 ♗f×c5l ♗e×c5 14 ♖e1 f6 15 f4.

7 0-0 0-0

8 b2-b4 ...

The sharpest continuation. One may also come across the following lines:

1) 8 c3 ♗d7 9 b4 b6 10 ♖b2 ♖b7 11 ♖e1 ♖e8, and Black has a solid defensive position (Stein-Hort, Los Angeles 1968).

2) 8 ♖e1 d4 9 a4 a5 10 ♗c4 b5 11 ♗a3 ♖a6, and the position is approximately in equilibrium (Hübner).

8 ... a7-a5

The correct reaction.

If 8 ... ♗d7 9 ♖b2 b6 10 ♖e1 d4 11 c3 dc 12 ♖×c3 ♖a6 13 ♗b3 ♗c7 14 d4 White obtains an advantage in the centre (Bronstein-Saidy, Tallinn 1973).

9 b4×a5 ♗d8×a5

In a game Stein-Haag (Tallinn 1973) White obtained a clear advantage after 9 ... ♖×a5? 10 ♖b2 ♗c7 11 ♗e2 d4 12 c3 dc 13 ♖×c3 ♖a4 14 ♗c4 b5 15 ♗c2 ♖e6 16 ♗c×e5 f6 17 ♗c4.

10 a2-a4 ...

If 10 ♖b2 ♗d7 11 ♖e1, then Black obtains equal chances by playing 11 ... ♗c7 (Filip).

10 ... ♗a5-c7

11 ♖c1-b2 d5-d4

Black has a solid position, the chances for both sides being approximately equal. There could now follow 12 c3 dc 13 ♖×c3 ♖d8 14 ♗c4 ♗d7 followed by c6-c5 and ♗c6 with equal play (Filip).

The move 12 c3 can also be answered by 12 ... c5 13 cd cd 14 ♗c4 ♗ec6 15 ♖a3 ♖e8, where-

upon the chances are again equal (Přibyl– Filip, Czechoslovakia 1974).

IV

(1 e4 c6)

2 ♖g1–e2 ...

Thus White evades the pin on the h5–d1 diagonal. The knight, however, takes a passive position and also blocks the path for the light-squared bishop. It is easy for Black to obtain equal play.

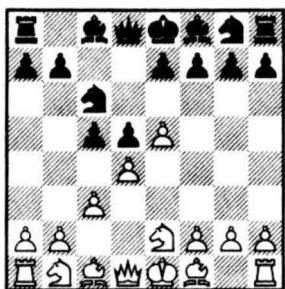
2 ... d7–d5

In a game Stolyar–Dubinin (USSR 1961) Black had no difficulty after 2 ... e5 3 d4 d6 4 ♖bc3 ♖f6 5 ♖g3 ♖e7.

3 e4–e5 c6–c5

4 d2–d4 ♖b8–c6

5 c2–c3



There can now follow: 5 ... ♖f5 (somewhat premature is 5 ... cd6 ♖f5 7 ♖bc3 e6 8 a3 ♖ge7 9 ♖g3 ♖g6 10 h4 h6 11 h5 ♖h7 12 ♖e3, and White's prospects are better, Neshmetdinov–Ilivitsky, USSR 1963) 6 ♖g3, and now:

1) 6 ... ♖g6 7 dc e6 8 ♖e3 ♖×e5 9 b4 ♖c6 10 ♖d3 ♖×d3

11 ♖×d3 ♖f6 12 ♖d2 ♖e7 13 0-0 (Rossetto–Bronstein, Amsterdam 1964). The continuation 13 ... a5! gives Black the better prospects.

2) 6 ... ♖d7 7 dc (7 ♖e3!?) 7 ... e6 8 ♖e3 ♖×e5 9 f4 ♖c6 10 ♖d3 ♖f6 11 ♖d2 g6 12 0-0 ♖g7, and Black's position is very good (Rossetto–Filip, Havana 1967).

3) 6 ... ♖×b1 7 ♖×b1 e6 8 a3 c4 9 h4 ♖c7 10 h5 0-0-0 11 ♖g4 ♖b8 12 ♖e2 with a slight advantage to White (Bronstein–Simagin, USSR 1961).

V

Rare white 2nd move continuations (1 e4 c6)

1) 2 b3 d5 (not bad either is the King's Indian structure with 2 ... e5 3 ♖b2 d6 4 d4 ♖f6, etc.) 3 ♖b2 de 4 ♖e2 ♖f5 (also possible is 4 ... ♖f6 or 4 ... f5!?) 5 ♖g3 ♖g6 6 h4 h6 7 ♖c3 ♖f6 8 h5 ♖h7 9 ♖e2 e6 10 0-0-0 ♖bd7 11 ♖g×e4 (Bokuchava–Holmov, USSR 1967). Black was able to equalise with 11 ... ♖a5 12 ♖b1 ♖e7 13 g3 0-0-0 14 ♖g2 ♖d5.

2) 2 f4 d5 3 e5 ♖f5 4 d4 e6 5 ♖f3 c5 6 c3 ♖c6 7 ♖d3 ♖h6, and Black has good prospects (Krause–Könecke, 1952).

3) 2 e5? d5 3 ed e6 (also possible is 3 ... ed, or 3 ... ♖×d6) 4 b3 ♖×d6 5 ♖b2 ♖f6 6 ♖a3 b5 7 c4 a6 8 g3 0-0 9 ♖g2 ♖c7 10 ♖c2 e5, and White goes on the defensive (van Geet–Hort, Beverwijk 1968).

Sample games

Game No. 1 (p. 44)

Ljubojević-Karpov

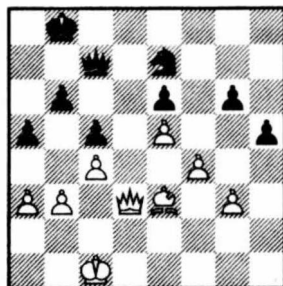
Linares 1981

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de
4 ♗×e4 ♜f5 5 ♗g3 ♜g6 6 ♗f3
♗d7 7 h4 h6 8 h5 ♜h7 9 ♜d3
♜×d3 10 ♞×d3 e6 11 ♜f4
♞a5+ 12 ♜d2 ♞c7 13 0-0-0 ♗gf6
14 ♗e4 0-0-0 15 g3 ♗c5 16 ♗×c5
♜×c5 17 ♞c4 ♜d6 18 ♞a4 ♜b8
19 ♗e5 ♗d5 20 f4 ♗b6 21 ♞b3
♜×e5 22 de ♗d5 23 c4(?)

A definite error, though hardly noticeable at this point. There should have followed 23 ♞f3 ♜d7 24 ♞g4 ♜hd8 25 ♞×g7 ♞b6 26 ♞g4 ♗e3 27 ♜×e3 ♞×e3+ 28 ♜b1 ♜×d1+ 29 ♜×d1 ♜×d1+ 30 ♞×d1 ♜c8, and according to Karpov Black equalises the game.

23 ... ♗e7 24 ♜e3 c5 25 ♜×d8+ ♜×d8 26 ♜d1 ♜×d1+ 27 ♞×d1 b6 28 ♞d3 (better is 28 g4 whereupon Black's simplest path to equality is 28 ... ♞b7!) 28 ... g6! (the beginning of a profound plan by which Black occupies the light squares and restricts his opponent's dark-squared bishop; the end-game proves to be in Black's

favour) 29 hg fg 30 a3 a5 31 b3 h5!



32 ♞e4 ♗f5 33 ♜f2 ♞d7 34 a4 ♜c7 35 ♜c2 (also in Black's favour is 35 ♞a8? ♞d3! 36 ♞a7+ ♜c8 37 ♞a8+ ♜d7 38 ♞b7+ ♜e8 39 ♞b8+ ♜f7 40 ♞b7+ ♗e7) 35 ... ♞d8 36 ♜c1 g5 37 fg ♞×g5+ 38 ♜c2 ♗e7 39 ♞h7 ♜d7 40 ♞e4 ♞f5 41 ♞d3+ ♜c6 42 ♞×f5 ef

The game has been simplified still further. There now ensues a duel between the black knight and the white bishop. Karpov demonstrates brilliant technique in converting his advantage.

43 ♜e3 ♗g6 44 e6 ♜d6 45 ♜g5 ♜×e6 46 ♜d3 f4 47 gf h4 48 ♜e3 h3 49 ♜f3 ♜f5 50 ♜g3 ♗×f4! 51 ♜d8 ♗e2+ 52 ♜×h3 ♗d4 53 ♜×b6 (or 53 ♜g2 ♜e4 54 ♜f1

♖d3 55 ♙e1 ♜×b3 56 ♙d1
 ♙×c4 57 ♙c2 ♜d4+ 58 ♙b2
 ♜e6 59 ♜×b6 ♙b4 60 ♜a7
 ♙×a4, and Black wins, Karpov)
 53 ... ♜×b3 54 ♜d8 ♙e4 55 ♙g4
 ♙d4 56 ♙f4 ♙×c4 57 ♙e4 ♙c3
 58 ♜f6+ ♙c2 59 ♜e5 c4 60 ♙e3
 c3 61 ♜f6 ♜c5 62 ♙e2 (if 62 ♙d4
 ♜×a4 63 ♙c4, then 63 ... ♜b6+!
 leads to victory) 62 ... ♙b3, and
 White resigned.

Game No. 2 (p. 60)

Belyavsky-Tal

USSR 1981

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 de
 4 ♜×e4 ♜f5 5 ♜g3 ♜g6 6 h4 h6
 7 ♜f3 ♜d7 8 h5 ♜h7 9 ♜d3
 ♜×d3 10 ♙×d3 ♜gf6 11 ♜f4 e6
 12 0-0-0 ♜e7 13 ♜e5! (a little analysed
 continuation, usually 13 c4 is
 chosen instead) 13 ... 0-0

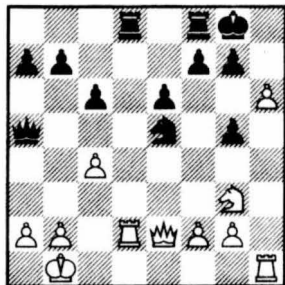
Committal but certainly playable.
 Also worth noting was 13 ... ♜d5
 14 ♜d2 ♜g5, and Black forces the
 important exchange of the dark-
 squared bishops. It should be men-
 tioned that the complex end-game
 after 13 ... ♜×e5 14 de ♙×d3
 15 ♙×d3 ♜d5 16 ♜d2 b5 17 ♜e4
 offers better chances to White.

14 ♙e2 ♙a5 15 ♙b1 ♙ad8
 16 c4

Worth considering was 16 ♜g6!?
 fg (the defensive continuation 16 ...
 ♙fe8 17 ♜×e7+ ♙×e7 18 ♜d6
 ♙ee8 19 c4 b5! is quieter)
 17 ♙×e6+ ♙h8 18 ♙×e7! ♜d5
 (after 18 ... ♜g8 19 ♙e3 ♙de8

20 ♙c1 White has a clear advan-
 tage) 19 ♜d2 ♙×a2+ 20 ♙×a2
 ♜×e7 21 ♜b4 c5 with complex
 play and approximately equal
 chances for both sides.

16 ... ♜×e5 17 de ♜d7 18 ♙d2
 (Tal recommends 18 a3 ♜c5
 19 ♙c2 and assesses the position as
 being slightly better for White)
 18 ... ♜g5! 19 ♜×g5 hg 20 h6
 ♜×e5! (but not 20 ... ♙×e5?
 21 h7+! ♙h8 22 ♙×d7 ♙×e2
 23 ♙×d8, and White wins the
 game; White also has an advantage
 after 20 ... g6?! 21 h7+ ♙h8
 22 ♙hd1)



21 ♙d5! (rescues the game) 21 ...
 ♙×d5 (not good is 21 ... ed
 22 ♙×e5!, and Black's K-side is fall-
 ing apart) 22 cd ♙×d5 23 hg
 ♙×g7, and in view of the following
 variation the partners agreed on a
 draw: 24 ♜h5+! ♙g6 25 ♜f4+ gf
 26 ♙h5+ ♙f6 27 ♙h4+ ♙f5
 28 ♙h5+ ♙e4 29 ♙e2+ ♙d4
 30 ♙d1+ ♙c5 31 ♙×d5+ ♙×d5
 32 ♙d2+. Or 28 ... ♙f6 with a
 draw by repetition.

Game No. 3 (p. 63)

*Suetin-Ratner**Leningrad 1951*

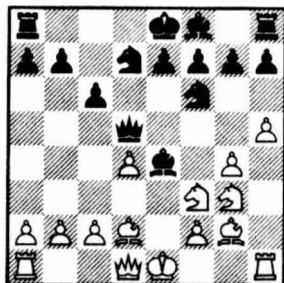
1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de
4 ♗×e4 ♜f5 5 ♗g3 ♜g6 6 ♗f3
♗f6 7 h4 ♗h5? (this variation was
quite popular in its time; it was
played successfully by Ratner vs Ko-
blenz in a game of the 14th USSR
Championship, 1945; after the pres-
ent game, however, the idea was
completely rejected) 8 ♗e2!

There is now the threat of 9 g4
♗f6 10 ♗g3 or 10 h5 and Black's
pieces are pushed aside and White
launches a pawn assault on the K-
side. Not good is, e. g. 8 ... h6?
9 g4 ♗f6 10 ♗e5 ♜e4 11 f3 ♜h7
12 ♗f4, and the white initiative is
rather unpleasant. 8 ... e6 is rela-
tively better, although even after this
move White has still more than suffi-
cient compensation for the pawn
after 9 g4 ♗f6 10 h5 ♜e4 11 ♗g3
♜×f3 12 ♗×f3 ♗×d4 13 g5
♗d5 14 g6!

8 ... ♗d7 9 g4 ♗hf6 10 h5 ♜e4
11 ♗g3 ♗a5+ (11 ... ♜×f3
12 ♗×f3 e6 13 g5 ♗d5 14 g6! is
bad for Black) 12 ♜d2! ♗d5
13 ♜g2

(see diagram)

13 ... ♜×f3 (White also has a
strong attack after 13 ... ♗×g4
14 c4 ♜×f3 15 ♜×f3 ♗c6+
16 ♖f1 ♗gf6 17 ♗b3!) 14 ♗×f3
♗×d4 15 g5! ♗d5 16 0-0-0 ♗e5
17 ♗b3



In spite of the extra pawn Black's
position is strategically lost. White
has a development advantage which
secures him a strong attack on the
king.

17 ... 0-0-0 18 ♜a5 ♗f4+
19 ♖b1 ♜d7 (after 19 ... b6
20 ♜×d5 cd 21 ♜×d5 ♜×d5
22 ♗×d5 ba 23 ♜d1 White's attack
quickly settles the issue) 20 ♜×d5
♜×d5 21 ♜×d5 cd 22 ♗×d5
♗c6 23 ♜d1 ♗d6 24 ♗f3 ♗e6
25 ♜c3 f6 26 ♗e4 ♗f7 27 ♗c5 e6
28 ♜d7 ♗e8 29 ♗f4! e5 30 ♗g4
♖b8 31 ♗×b7 ♗c8 32 ♗e6 ♜b4
33 ♜×b4 ♗×b4 34 ♗d6+ ♖a8
35 ♗c5 ♗b8 36 a3 ♗×d6
37 ♜×d6, and Black resigned.

Game No. 4 (p. 114)

*Karpov-Miles**Amsterdam 1981*

1 e4 c6 2 c4 d5 3 ed cd 4 cd
♗f6 5 ♗c3 ♗×d5 6 d4 g6
7 ♜b5+ ♗c6 8 ♗a4 ♗×c3 9 bc
(here and on the next move too the
pawn gain 9 ♜×c6+ bc
10 ♗×c6+ ♜d7 is not very enti-
cing, since Black is well compensated

for the pawn, the better development giving him a lasting initiative) 9 ... ♖g7 10 ♜f3 0-0 11 0-0 ♜e6

This is a blunder. Correct was 11 ... ♜a5 followed by a7-a6 with equal prospects. Now White creates a substantial weakness in the opponent's camp.

12 ♜xc6 bc 13 ♜a3 ♜c7 14 ♜fe1 ♜fe8 15 ♜e5 ♜ab8 16 c4 ♜b6 (also after 16 ... ♜bc8 17 ♜c5 a5 18 ♜ab1 Black's position is difficult) 17 ♜c5 ♜b2 18 ♜xc6 ♜c8 19 ♜a4 ♜b7 20 ♜ad1 ♜xe5 21 ♜xe5 ♜c6 22 ♜xa7 ♜b7 23 ♜a3

White has obtained a clear material advantage which he converts energetically.

23 ... ♜xc4 24 ♜xe7 ♜d5 25 ♜de1 ♜g7 26 ♜e3 ♜cb8 27 h4 ♜b1 (bad is 27 ... ♜xg2? 28 d5 ♜xd5 29 ♜d4, and White wins) 28 ♜xb1 ♜xb1+ 29 ♜h2 h6 30 f3 ♜xa2 31 ♜c5 ♜b8 32 d5 ♜f6 33 ♜h5! ♜g8 34 ♜d4 ♜d6+ 35 ♜c5 ♜e8 36 ♜xh6 ♜xe5 37 ♜xe5 ♜xe5 38 d6 ♜e6 39 ♜d2 ♜d7 40 ♜d4 ♜e6 41 ♜a7, and Black resigned.

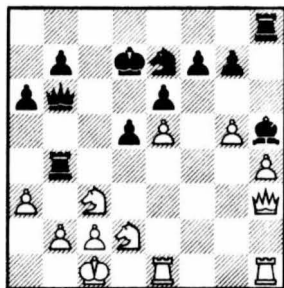
Game No. 5 (p. 122)
Hort-Seirawan
Bad Kissingen 1981

1. e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 ♜f5 4 ♜c3 e6 5 g4 ♜g6 6 ♜ge2 c5 7 h4 cd 8 ♜xd4 h5 9 ♜b5+ ♜d7 10 ♜g5 ♜e7 11 f4 hg 12 ♜xg4 ♜xg5!

The correct decision. Black fixes

his opponent's pawns on the dark squares and obtains excellent counterplay on the light squares. He can then set up threats on the Q-side.

13 fg ♜h5 14 ♜h3 (14 ♜g3 may be better) 14 ... ♜e7! 15 ♜d2 ♜c8 16 ♜ae1 ♜b6 17 ♜b3 a6 18 ♜xd7+ ♜xd7 19 ♜c1 (in Black's favour is also 19 ♜e3 ♜xe3+ followed by 20 ... ♜f5) 19 ... ♜c4 20 ♜d2 ♜b4 21 a3(?)



21 ... ♜xb2!

The beginning of the decisive assault. The white king is defenceless.

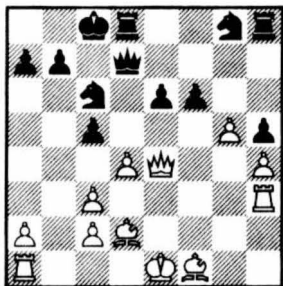
22 ♜a4 ♜xc2+ 23 ♜xc2 ♜c8+ 24 ♜c3 d4 25 ♜b1 ♜c6 26 ♜b3 ♜d5 27 ♜b1 ♜g4 28 ♜h2 dc 29 ♜c1 a5 30 ♜f1 ♜f5 31 a4 c2 32 ♜a3 ♜xa4 33 ♜xb7+ ♜c6 34 ♜xf5, and White resigned.

Game No. 6 (p. 1201)
Vasyukov-Rasivayev
USSR 1981

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 ♜f5 4 ♜c3 e6 5 g4 ♜g6 6 ♜ge2 ♜b4 7 h4 ♜e4 8 ♜h3 h5?! (more cautious is 8 ... h6) 9 ♜g3! c5 10 ♜g5 f6 11 ♜d2 ♜xc3 (11 ... cd? is bad be-

cause of 12 ♖c×e4! 12 bc ♖c6
 13 ef gf (also favourable for White is
 13 ... ♖×f6 14 g5 ♖d7 15 ♖×e4
 de 16 ♖e2) 14 ♖×e4 de 15 ♖e2
 ♖d7 16 ♖×e4 0-0-0?

After this move Black's position
 becomes critical. Better was 16 ...
 hg 17 ♖g6+ ♖f7 18 ♖×g4 0-0-0.
 17 g5!



17 ... ♖ge7 18 gf ♖f5 19 ♖d3
 cd 20 cd ♖hg8 21 ♖g5 ♖b4
 22 ♖d2 ♖b8 23 ♖b1 ♖d5 24 c4
 ♖b6 25 c5 ♖d5 26 ♖db2 ♖a8
 27 f7! ♖×f7 28 ♖×d8 ♖×d8
 29 ♖×b7 ♖f6 (White also wins af-
 ter 29 ... ♖×b7 30 ♖×b7 ♖×b7
 31 ♖×e6 ♖×d4 32 ♖a6+ ♖a8
 33 ♖f7) 30 ♖d3. Black resigned.

Index of openings and variations

Caro-Kann Defence 1 e4 c6	9
Part I	
1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5	10
Chapter 1	
1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♗×e4 ♗d7	11
I 5 ♗f3 ♗gf6	12
A 6 ♗×f6+	13
B 6 ♗g3	16
II 5 ♜c4 ♗gf6 6 ♗g5 e6 7 ♞e2 ♗b6	19
A 8 ♜b3 h6 9 ♗5f3	21
a 9 ... c5	22
1 10 ♜e3	23
2 10 ♜f4	24
b 9 ... a5	24
B 8 ♜d3 h6 9 ♗5f3 c5	26
a 10 dc	26
1 10 ... ♗bd7	26
2 10 ... ♜×c5 11 ♗e5 ♗bd7 12 ♗gf3 ♗×e5 13 ♗×e5 0-0 14 ♜d2 ♞d5!	29
2a 15 0-0	32
2b 15 0-0-0	32
b 10 ♜e3	33
Chapter 2	
1 e4 c6 2d4 d5 3 ♗c3 de 4 ♗×e4 ♜f5 5 ♗g3 ♜g6	34
I 6 h4 h6	37
A 7 ♗f3 ♗d7	38
a 8 ♜d3	38
b 8 h5 ♜h7 9 ♜d3 ♜×d3 10 ♞×d3	41
1 10 ... ♞c7	44
1a 11 ♜d2 e6	44

x	12 0-0-0 ♖gf6	44
x1	13 ♖e4 0-0-0 14 g3	45
Variation 1:	14 ... ♖×e4	46
Variation 2:	14 ... ♖c5	47
x2	13 c4	48
x3	13 ♙b1	49
y	12 ♗e2 ♖gf6 13 0-0-0 0-0-0 14 ♖e5	49
y1	14 ... ♖b6 15 ♙a5	52
Variation 1:	15 ... ♗d5	53
Variation 2:	15 ... c5	54
y2	14 ... ♖×e5	55
y3	14 ... ♖b8!?	55
1b	11 ♗h4	56
2	10 ... ♖gf6	58
2a	11 ♙d2	58
2b	11 ♙f4	60
B	7 ♖h3	61
II	6 ♖f3	62
III	6 ♙c4	65

Chapter 3

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖×e4 ♖f6 5 ♖×f6+	66
I 5 ... ef	67
A 6 ♙c4	67
a 6 ... ♙d6 7 ♗e2+	68
1 7 ... ♙e7	68
2 7 ... ♗e7	69
b 6 ... ♙e7	70
c 6 ... ♗e7+	70
d 6 ... ♖d7	71
B 6 c3 ♙d6 7 ♙d3 0-0 8 ♗c2 ♗e8+ 9 ♖e2	72
a 9 ... g6	74
b 9 ... h6	75
C 6 ♖f3	75
II 5 ... gf	76
A 6 c3	77
B 6 ♖e2	80
C 6 ♖f3	81
a 6 ... ♙g4 7 ♙e2 ♗c7	81

1	8 h3	83
2	8 0-0	83
3	8 ♖e3	84
b	6 ... ♗f5	85
D	6 ♗e2	85

Chapter 4

1	e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♗c3 g6	87
I	4 e5	87
II	4 ♗f3	88
Variation:	3 ♗d2	89

Part II

1	e4 c6 2 d4 d5	90
---	---------------	----

Chapter 1

System	3 f3	90
Exchange system		91
1	e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 ♗d3 ♗c6 5 c3	
I	5 ... ♗f6	92
II	5 ... g6	94

Chapter 2

Panov Attack		95
1	e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c4 ♗f6 5 ♗c3	
I	5 ... e6 6 ♗f3 ♗e7 7 c5 0-0 8 ♗d3 b6 9 b4 a5 10 ♗a4	95
A	10 ... ♗bd7	97
B	10 ... ♗fd7	98
II	5 ... ♗c6	99
A	6 ♗g5	99
a	6 ... ♗b6! 7 cd ♗x d4	100
1	8 ♗f3	100
2	8 ♗e3	101
3	8 ♗ge2	101
b	6 ... ♗a5	102
B	6 ♗f3	102
III	5 ... g6	104
A	6 ♗b3 ♗g7 7 cd 0-0	105
a	8 ♗e2	106
b	8 g3	107

1	8 ... ♖bd7	108
2	8 ... e6!?	108
c	8 ♖ge2	109
B	6 cd ♖×d5	109
a	7 ♗b3	110
b	7 ♜c4	111
System 2 c4		111
1	e4 c6 2 c4 d5 3 ed cd 4 cd	
I	4 ... ♗×d5	112
II	4 ... ♖f6	113
A	5 ♗a4+	114
B	5 ♜b5+	115
a	5 ... ♖bd7	115
b	5 ... ♜d7	116
III	4 ... a6	116
Chapter 3		
Closed system		117
1	e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 ♜f5	
I	4 ♜d3	119
II	4 ♖c3 e6 5 g4 ♜g6 6 ♖ge2 c5 7 h4	120
A	7 ... h6	121
B	7 ... cd	122
III	4 ♖e2 e6 5 ♖g3 ♜g6 6 h4 h6 7 h5 ♜h7 8 ♜d3 ♜×d3	123
A	9 cd!?	124
B	9 ♗×d3	124
IV	4 c4	124
V	4 h4!?	125
A	4 ... h6	125
B	4 ... h5	126
Part III		
Other white 2nd move continuations		127
1	e4 c6	
I	2 ♖f3 d5 3 ♖c3	127
A	3 ... ♜g4 4 h3	128
a	4 ... ♜×f3 5 ♗×f3	128
1	5 ... ♖f6	129
1a	6 d4	129

1b	6 d3 e6	v	130
v	7 g3		131
w	7 g4!		132
x	7 ♖d2		132
y	7 a3		133
z	7 ♖e2		134
2	5 ... e6		134
b	4 ... ♖h5!		136
B	3 ... ♗f6		139
C	3 ... de ♗×e4		140
a	4 ... ♖g4		140
b	4 ... ♗d7		141
c	4 ... ♗f6 5 ♗×f6+		142
1	5 ... ef		142
2	5 ... gf 6 ♖c4		143
2a	6 ... ♗g8		144
2b	6 ... ♖f5		144
II	2 ♗c3		145
III	2 d3		145
IV	2 ♗e2		149
V	Rare white 2nd move continuations (2 b3, 2 f4 and 2 e5?)		149